TeA
Digitally signed by
TeAM YYePG
DN: $\mathrm{cn}=\mathrm{TeAM}$
YYePG, c=US,
$0=$ TeAM YYePG,
ou=TeAM YYePG,
email=yyepg@msn
Reason: I attest to
the accuracy and
integrity of this
document
Date: 2005.04.13
$18: 34: 17+08^{\prime} 00^{\prime}$

## Third Pilition

## The Art

## Problem Posing



Stophon I. Brown • Marion I. Walírer

# The Art of Problem Posing 

## Third Edition

This page intentionally left blank

# The Art of Problem Posing 

## Third Edition

Stephen I. Brown, Professor Emeritus<br>State University of New York at Buffalo<br>Marion I. Walter, Professor Emerita<br>University of Oregon

Editor:
Cover Design:
Textbook Production Manager:
Composition:
Text and Cover Printer:

Lori Hawver
Kathryn Houghtaling Lacey
Paul Smolenski
LEA Desktop Production
Sheridan Books, Inc.

Copyright © 2005 by Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc.
All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by photostat, microform, retrieval system, or any other means, without prior written permission of the publisher.

Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Inc., Publishers
10 Industrial Avenue
Mahwah, New Jersey 07430
www.erlbaum.com

## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Brown, Stephen I.
The art of problem posing / Stephen I. Brown, Marion I.
Walter--3rd ed.
p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-8058-4976-9 (casebound : alk. paper)
ISBN 0-8058-4977-7 (pbk. : alk. paper)

1. Problem solving. I. Walter, Marion I., 1928- II. Title.

QA63.B76 2005
$510-\mathrm{dc} 22$
2004049703

Books published by Lawrence Erlbaum Associates are printed on acidfree paper, and their bindings are chosen for strength and durability.

## Contents

Acknowledgments: Third Edition ..... vii
1 Introduction ..... 1
Origins of the Book ..... 6
Audience ..... 7
Ways of Reading the Book ..... 7
Contextualizing the Third Edition ..... 8
2 Two Problem-Posing Perspectives: ..... 12
Accepting and Challenging
A First Look; What Are Some Answers? ..... 12
A Second Look at $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ ..... 14
A New Perspective ..... 17
3 The First Phase of Problem Posing: Accepting ..... 19
Sticking to the Given: Some Examples ..... 19
Some Reflections on Phenomena to Investigate ..... 25
Strategies for Phase-One Problem Generation ..... 26
4 The Second Phase of Problem Posing: "What-If-Not" ..... 33
Seeing What Is in Front of You ..... 33
Attribute Listing for a New Problem Posing Strategy ..... 35
Now What? A Look at Three Attributes of Geoboards ..... 38
What Have We Done? ..... 44
A Return to the Pythagorean Theorem ..... 46
Summary ..... 64
5 The "What-If-Not" Strategy in Action ..... 66
Two Sample "What-If-Nots" in Some Detail ..... 66
Other Beginnings: Some Snippets ..... 79
Summary ..... 109
6 Some Natural Links Between Problem Posing ..... 111 and Problem Solving
One Example in Detail ..... 111
Problem Solving Yields Problem Posing ..... 116
Reflections on Natural Links ..... 120
Summary ..... 126
7 Writing for Journals of Editorial Boards: ..... 128 Student as Author and Critic
Course Description ..... 129
Organization of the Course ..... 131
A Word of Caution ..... 135
"Snippets" of Journal Materials ..... 137
Some "Moore" Reflections on the Editorial Board Scheme ..... 147
Variation of Editorial Board Experience: A Secular Talmud ..... 153
T.A.L.M.U.D.ic Course Description ..... 154
Organization of The T.A.L.M.U.D.ic Course ..... 156
A T.A.L.M.U.D.ic "Snippet" ..... 159
Other T.A.L.M.U.D.ic Beginnings ..... 162
Summary ..... 164
8 Conclusion ..... 165
A Look Back ..... 165
Problem Posing and Math Anxiety ..... 166
Problem Posing and Cooperation ..... 167
A Research Agenda ..... 168
Bibliography ..... 172
Author Index ..... 177
Subject Index ..... 179

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS Third Edition

We wish to thank all our students who have, over the years, participated directly in our problem posing courses or who have experienced the spirit of such courses in more conventional settings. In addition to learning content per se, they were also encouraged to examine their fundamental beliefs about the nature of mathematics as well as their own learning style. The reaction and participation of each group of students helped us to expand and refine our ideas about problem posing and solving, as well as about our role as teachers. The most valuable gifts they have given us have been the challenges to modify our emerging scheme-a scheme that is itself heavily rooted in the concept of modification.

Since the publication of the first two editions of The Art of Problem Posing in 1983 and 1990, the concept and language of problem posing have received more serious attention in both curriculum and research. We are grateful not only to our former students but to our colleagues as well, who have applied and elaborated on the concepts developed in the earlier editions of The Art of Problem Posing, and in articles of ours that both predated and postdated the book.

One such contribution by a colleague appears in chapter 7. Deborah Moore-Russo, on the faculty of the University at Buffalo as of 2003, has experimented with the student writing and editorial board scheme that the authors introduced in the first edition (1983) of The Art of Problem Posing. We were favorably impressed with her novel ways of incorporating and modifying these ideas, and decided to interview her for a section of that chapter (chap. 7) in this edition. We are confident that many readers will profit from her insights.

Another significant contribution that has been made by colleagues (including ourselves as a special case) and former students appeared in a publication several years
after our 1990 edition of The Art of Problem Posing. In 1993, we edited a book of their published writings that focused on our problem posing themes. The book, Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications, is discussed in the last section of chapter $1 .{ }^{1}$ In that section, we discuss that contribution and others in light of the uses to be made of this third revision.

We once more express our gratitude to Mary Sullivan, Evelyn Anderson, and Mary Ann Green, all of whom spent many hours typing drafts at various stages of the first edition published in 1983.

Though less patient, speedy, and accurate, we wish to thank two other people who have taken on the word-processing burden of preparing revisions of the second and third edition, published in 1990 and 2004, respectively. That is, we applaud Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter for their heroic deed of typing essential modifications for those editions on their own. Actually such modesty neglects to give credit where it is really due. The staff of Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, our publishing company, completely retyped the manuscript of the second edition, rather than scanning it, in order to minimize even minor errors of the scanning process. It made our job of revising the earlier edition and preparing the third one considerably more pleasant.

What also contributed to the pleasant publishing process was the assistance we received from the editors who helped shepherd through each of the editions. Julia Hough and Marcia Wertime were editors for the first edition (published by the Franklin Institute Press), and they offered constructive, valuable, and enthusiastic help. Julia Hough encouraged us to exhibit and share the humor that the both of us enjoyed in working on this project. She then passed the mantle to Hollis Heimbouch and John Eagleson for assisting us in the preparation of the second edition for Erlbaum.

Lori Hawver from Erlbaum has been our editor for this edition, and she has been most cooperative in helping to pave the way for the relatively smooth transition to this third revision. Both Paul Smolenski (textbook production manager) and Elizabeth Dugger (copyeditor) have maintained the high quality of editorial assistance we feel privileged to have received.

If we extrapolate from a simple pattern that emerges from the three publication dates of The Art of Problem Posing (1983, 1990, 2004), then the next revision would take place in 2025. At that point it is conceivable that books and electronic communication will be passé. Perhaps something akin to mind reading or forehead bar codes will be the currency of the day, if not a return to sand writing. We apologize for getting carried away with problem posing even before we begin (unless, in wonderfully nonlinear spirit, you read this after you have completed the

[^0]rest of the book). Perhaps we can salvage this distraction by asking you to come up with other ways of extending the pattern of the first three dates such that it yields a date other than 2025 for the fourth revision. Well, we are getting ahead of ourselves. This is a just a taste of a small part of the thinking you will engage in during the problem-posing adventure to come.

This page intentionally left blank

## 1

## Introduction

Where do problems come from, and what do we do with them once we have them? The impression we get in much of schooling is that they come from textbooks or from teachers, and that the obvious task of the student is to solve them. Schematically, we have the following model:


The purpose of this book is to encourage a shift of control from "others" to oneself in the posing of problems, and to suggest a broader conception of what can be done with problems as well. ${ }^{1}$ Why, however, would anyone be interested in problem posing in the first place? A partial answer is that problem posing can help students to see a standard topic in a sharper light and enable them to acquire a deeper understanding of it as well. It can also encourage the creation of new ideas derived from any given topic-whether a part of the standard curriculum or otherwise. Although our focus is on the field of mathematics, the strategies we

[^1]discuss can be applied to activities as diverse as trying to create something humorous, attempting to understand the significance of the theory of evolution, or searching for the design of a new type of car bumper.

Have you thought, for example, of designing car bumpers that make use of liquid or that are magnetized, or shaped like a football? The creation of air bags suggests yet another option that was not available to us when the first edition of this book was published: that bumpers might be capable of inflation on impact. Or, have you thought of the possibility that they may be made of glass, the fragility of which might discourage people from driving recklessly or relying so heavily on the use of the automobile?

In addition to teaching explicit strategies for problem posing, there is an underlying attitude toward "coming to know" something that we would like to encourage. Coming to know something is not a "spectator sport," although numerous textbooks, especially in mathematics, and traditional modes of instruction may give that impression. As Dewey asserted many years ago, and as the constructivist school of thought has vigorously argued more recently, to claim that "coming to know" is a participant sport is to require that we operate on and even modify the things we are trying to understand. ${ }^{2}$ The irony is that it is only in seeing a thing as something else that we sometimes come to appreciate and understand it. This attitude is central to the problem posing perspective developed in this book-found especially in chapter 4 and beyond as we explore what we have coined a "What-If-Not" stance.

Our strategy in this book for revealing and analyzing issues and ideas is generally an inductive one. Whenever possible, we attempt first to expose some problem posing issue through an activity that gets at it in an implicit and playful manner. After there has been some immersion in an activity, we turn toward a reflection on its significance. We believe that it is necessary first to get "caught up in" (and sometimes even "caught," in the sense of "trapped by") the activity in order to appreciate where we are headed. Such a point of view requires both patience and also an inclination to recover from discomfort associated with being "caught."

One way of gaining an appreciation for the importance of problem posing is to relate it to problem solving-a topic that has gained widespread acceptance (or rejuvenation, depending on your point of view). Problem posing is deeply embedded in the activity of problem solving in two very different ways.

First of all, it is impossible to solve a new problem without first reconstructing the task by posing new problem(s) in the very process of solving. Asking questions like the following, propel us to generate new problems in an effort to "crack" the

[^2]original one: What is this problem really asking, saying, or demanding? What if I shift my focus from what seems to be an obvious component of this problem to a part that seems remote?

Second, it is frequently the case that after we have supposedly solved a problem, we do not fully understand the significance of what we have done, unless we begin to generate and try to analyze a completely new set of problems. You have probably had the experience of solving some problem (perhaps of a practical, nonmathematical nature) only to remark, "That was very clever, but what have I really done?" These matters are discussed with examples in chapter 6.

Often our formal education suppresses the relationship between the asking of questions-both new and "off-base"-and the coming up with answers. In a book that calls for a revised attitude toward education, D. Bob Gowin commented:

Recently a teacher was overheard to announce: "When I want your questions, I'll give them to you." Much of school practice consists of giving definite, almost concrete answers. Perhaps boredom sets in as answers are given to questions that were never asked. ${ }^{3}$

More than boredom is at stake, however, when we are robbed of the opportunity of asking questions. The asking of questions or the posing of problems is a much more significant task than we are usually led to believe. The point is made rather poignantly in the story of Gertrude Stein's response to Alice B. Toklas, on Gertrude's death bed. Alice, awaiting Gertrude's legacy of wisdom, asked, "The answers Gertrude, what are the answers?"-whereupon Gertrude allegedly responded, "The questions, what are the questions?"

The centrality of problem posing or question asking is picked up by Stephen Toulmin in his effort to understand how disciplines are subdivided within the sciences. What distinguishes atomic physics from molecular biology, for example? He points out that our first inclination to look for differences in the specific content is mistaken, for specific theories and concepts are transitory and certainly change over time. On the other hand, Toulmin commented:

> If we mark sciences off from one another ... by their respective "domains," even these domains have to be identified not by the types of objects with which they deal, but rather by the questions which arise about them.... Any particular type of object will fall in the domain of (say) "biochemistry," only in so far as it is a topic for correspondingly "biochemical" questions. ${ }^{4}$

An even deeper appreciation for the role of problem generation in literature is expressed by Mr. Lurie to his son, in Chaim Potok's novel In the Beginning:

[^3]I want to tell you something my brother David, may he rest in peace, once said to me. He said it is as important to learn the important questions as it is the important answers. It is especially important to learn the questions to which there may not be good answers. ${ }^{5}$

Indeed, we need to find out why some questions may not have good answers. For example, the questions might seem foolish or meaningless; or it might be that the questions are fundamental, personal human questions that each of us fights a lifetime to try to understand; it may be that they are unanswerable questions because they are undecidable from a technical point of view-an issue in the foundations of mathematics associated with Gödel ${ }^{6}$; it might also be, however, that our perspective on a problem is too rigid and we are blinded in our ability to see how a question might bear on a situation.

The history of every discipline-including mathematics-lends credence to the belief not only that it may be hard to distinguish good questions from bad ones in some absolute sense, but that very talented people may not be capable of seeing the difference even for a period of centuries. For a very long time, people tried to prove Euclid's fifth postulate:
"Through a given external point, there is exactly one line parallel to a given line."
It was only during the latter half of the 19th century that mathematicians began to realize that the difficulty in answering the question lay in the assumptions behind the question itself. The implicit question was:
"How can you prove the parallel postulate from the other postulates or axioms?"

It took hundreds of years to appreciate that the "how" was an interloper of sorts. If you delete the "how," the question is answerable (in the negative, it turns out); if you do not do so, the question destroys itself, as is the case with the pacifistic wife who is asked; "When did you stop beating your spouse?"

So far, we have tried to point out some intimate connections between the asking and answering of questions, and between the posing and solving of problems. It is worth appreciating, however, that not everything we experience comes as a problem. Imagine being given a situation in which no problem has been posed at all. One possibility of

[^4]course is that we merely appreciate the situation, and do not attempt to act on it in any way. When we see a beautiful sunset, a quite reasonable "response" may not be to pose a problem, but rather to experience joy. Another reasonable response for some situations, however, might be to generate a problem or to ask a question, not for the purpose of solving the original situation (a linguistically peculiar formulation), but in order to uncover or to create a problem or problems that derive from the situation.

Suppose, for example, that you are given a sugar cube or the statement, "A number has exactly three factors." Strictly speaking, there is no problem in either case. Yet there are an infinite number of problems we can pose about either of the situations-some more meaningful than others, some more significant than others. As in the case of being presented with a problem, it is often impossible to tell in the absence of considerable reflection what questions or problems are meaningful or significant in a situation. We hope to persuade you, in much of what follows, that concepts like "significance" and "meaningfulness" are as much a function of the ingenuity and the playfulness we bring to a situation as they are a function of the situation itself. Frequently, a slight turn of phrase, or recontextualizing the situation, or posing a problem will transform it from one that appears dull into one that "glitters."

In addition to reasons we have discussed so far, there are good psychological reasons for taking problem posing seriously. It is no great secret that many people have a considerable fear of mathematics or at least a wish to establish a healthy distance from it. There are many reasons for this attitude, some of which derive from an education that focuses on "right" answers. People tend to view a situation or even a problem as something that is given and that must be responded to in a small number of ways. Frequently people fear that they will be stuck or will not be able to come up with what they perceive to be the right way of doing things.

Problem posing, however, has the potential to create a totally new orientation toward the issue of who is in charge and what has to be learned. Given a situation in which one is asked to generate problems or ask questions-in which it is even permissible to modify the original thing-there is no right question to ask at all. Instead, there are an infinite number of questions and/or modifications and, as we implied earlier, even they cannot easily be ranked in an a priori way.

Thus, we can break the "right way" syndrome by engaging in problem generation. In addition, we may very well have the beginnings of a mechanism for confronting the rather widespread feelings of mathematical anxiety-something we discuss further in Chapter 8.

This book then represents an effort on our part to try to understand:

1. What problem posing consists of and why it is important.
2. What strategies exist for engaging in and improving problem posing.
3. How problem posing relates to problem solving.

While problem posing is a necessary ingredient of problem solving, it takes years for an individual-and perhaps centuries for the species-to gain the wisdom
and courage to do both of these well. No single book can provide a panacea for improving problem posing and problem solving. However, this book offers a first step for those who would like to learn to enhance their inclination to pose problems. While this book does analyze the role of problem solving in education, it does so with a recurring focus on problem posing.

## ORIGINS OF THE BOOK

The material for this book was influenced heavily by our experience in creating and team-teaching courses on problem posing and solving at Harvard Graduate School of Education beginning in the mid 1960s. ${ }^{7}$ In addition to graduate students whose major concern was mathematics and education on both the elementary and secondary school level, on several occasions we had students at Harvard who were preparing to be lawyers, anthropologists, and historians. Subsequently, we taught variations of that course to both graduate and undergraduate students at numerous institutions, including Syracuse University, Dalhousie University, the University of Georgia, the University of Oregon, the University at Buffalo, and Hebrew University in Jerusalem. It is interesting for us to reflect on the fact that we did not originally perceive that we were creating something of a paradigm shift in focusing on problem posing. We thought rather that we were adding a new and small wrinkle to the already existing body of literature on teaching of problem solving that had been popularized primarily by the work of George Polya. Over time, however, we have come to appreciate why the activity of problem posing ought to assume a greater degree of centrality in education. Actually, it was the question we ask the reader to consider at the beginning of chapter 2 (about the Pythagorean equation) that launched us on the venture in the first place. We ourselves were unaware of the gold mine that would be revealed once we "unpacked" what we incorrectly thought was a good question.

[^5]
## AUDIENCE

The Art of Problem Posing is written for a wide audience. Although much of the book can be appreciated after having completed a high school mathematics program, it is intended for college mathematics students, present and future teachers of mathematics in middle school, in secondary school, and in higher levels of education, as well for as interested laypersons. Although many of the examples we use to illustrate our point of view may require technical competence beyond what would be expected in the elementary grades, some of this material would be appropriate for those interested in elementary education. ${ }^{8}$ This is especially true of the introduction to many of the geometric and arithmetic problem posing examples. On the other hand, we hope to illustrate that many rather quite simple looking elementary ideas are a heartbeat away from deep issues of a mathematical and educational nature.

This book also has implications for curriculum writers and for those who wish to do research on the power of problem posing and its relationship to a host of variables ranging from fear of mathematics to new strategies for teaching mathematics. We hope that it also suggests directions for educators in fields other than mathematics as well. In fact, we are eager to continue to hear from practitioners in fields such as architecture, medicine, and engineering, who have viewed their work from a problem posing point of view, and who might find it useful to apply some of our techniques. ${ }^{9}$

## WAYS OF READING THE BOOK

Although it would be helpful to explore many of the specific mathematical ideas presented early on in each chapter before attempting to pursue the more general issues we bring up later in the chapter, it will not be a hindrance to skip examples during the first reading that appear inaccessible. In many cases, we return to these examples later in the text.

We have stressed the importance of participation in coming to know and we hope that you will read this book in an active way. We hope you will interrupt your reading every so often in order to explore, on your own, many of the emerging ideas before they fully unfold. So, for example, if you come across a list of questions or statements that reflect what former students may have contributed on a particular topic, stop to devise your own response before reading on. While reading the book,

[^6]you might wish to record questions that occur to you of a mathematical, philosophical, pedagogical nature-questions that you could perhaps explore with a partner or reexamine on your own later.

On your first reading, after completing this chapter, you most likely will profit from reading chapters 2 through 4 in sequence-even if you decide to skim or skip over some sections or details. Perhaps the densest sections are those in chapter 4 that focus on the Pythagorean theorem, following the discussion of the geoboard. You may be intrigued by the interplay of algebra and geometry and by the generalizations of that theorem as you read chapter 4. If not, however, try to seek out the gist of those sections with the intention of returning to them at a later reading.

Having read through chapter 4 , you can appreciate chapters 5 through 8 in a less sequential manner. Chapter 5 provides illustrations of material that make use of the What-If-Not strategy developed in chapter 4. Chapter 6 discloses some surprising ways in which problem posing and solving relate. Chapter 7 is particularly appropriate for teacher educators. It discusses novel ways in which writing can be incorporated in the curriculum in a cooperative and interactive mode. We elaborate on these schemes in the next section. Although chapter 8 is the summary chapter, it does place the entire book in context once more, adding a few new wrinkles along the way-especially for those interested in research topics related to problem solving. As such, it need not be read at the end of your adventure in problem posing, but you may enjoy tasting the dessert whenever the urge strikes.

## CONTEXTUALIZING THE THIRD EDITION

As we mentioned in the Acknowledgments, several years after the publication of the second edition of The Art of Problem Posing, we edited a book of readings most of which focused on the central theme of this book. The essays we included refer explicitly to one of the first two editions and/or to related articles that we wrote. The collection deals with an array of theoretical as well as practical issues.

The theoretical essays include matters related to the nature of problem posing in relation to problem solving, the role of problem posing in the education of women, its place in the encouragement of a multiplistic view of the world, and its relationship to a view of science as a falsifiable form of inquiry. The more practical ones focus on issues in specific branches of mathematics and education. In addition, there are essays that explore the role of problem posing in fields other than education in mathematics-including biology and psychology. We have included interpretive text throughout that collection, and that book may be thought of as a supplement to this edition of The Art of Problem Posing. It may be particularly useful as a companion text to this one for instructors who wish to have their students participate in writing projects of the sorts we discuss in
chapter 7. We make reference to that collection-Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications-in relevant sections of this edition. ${ }^{10}$

In the second edition (1990) of The Art of Problem Posing, we mentioned the emergence of a then new interdisciplinary journal first published in 1987, entitled Questioning Exchange. It was edited by James T. Dillon from the University of California at Riverside, and it focused on the role of the problem or the question in relation to the solution or the answer. It explored issues in many fields of scholarship. ${ }^{11}$ Although not readily accessible, that collection would also be a valuable companion in reading this edition, for those who are interested in some of the more theoretical issues such as discussion of the various definitions of "problem."

One resource that is more directly focused upon mathematics education per se and that is readily accessible is a collection of documents produced by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. These four documents produced between 1989 and 2000 are part of a program known as "The Standards." ${ }^{12}$ They are historically interesting because at the time they were first created, they were the first effort by a professional organization in any of the school disciplines to articulate specific and extensive goals for teachers, curriculum designers, and policymakers on a national level. The first document was published in 1989, several years after the appearance of the first edition of The Art of Problem. Here is an illustration of how the 1989 Curriculum and Evaluation Standards for School Mathematics acknowledged the role of problem posing ${ }^{13}$ :


#### Abstract

Students in grades 9-12 should also have some experience recognizing and formulating their own problems, an activity that is at the heart of doing mathematics. For example, exploration of the perimeters of various rectangles with area $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ by means of models or drawings, with data as recorded in [the table below], could lead to student recognition and formulation of such problems as the following: Is there a rectangle of minimum perimeter with the specified area? What are its dimensions?


[^7]| Rectangle Data |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Area | Length | Width | Perimeter |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 1 cm | 24 cm | 50 cm |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 2 cm | 12 cm | 28 cm |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 3 cm | 8 cm | 22 cm |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 4 cm | 6 cm | 20 cm |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 6 cm | 4 cm | 20 cm |
| $24 \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ | 8 cm | 3 cm | 22 cm |

While the 1989 document selects some important aspects of problem posing, subsequent ones make reference to and draw more broadly on themes developed in The Art of Problem Posing and elsewhere. In exploring this material (as well as our own), it will be worthwhile for the reader to determine the extent to which those documents tend to attach problem posing to the bootstraps of problem solving. Now that the "Standards" are available on the Internet, and are evolving into an interactive, living and modifiable document, it is likely that future modifications will make use of problem posing in a way that exemplifies even deeper connections between it, problem solving, mathematical and self-understanding. ${ }^{14}$

The most recent "Standards" illustrate the potential of computer technology as a problem-posing mechanism, and in this edition of The Art of Problem Posing we have expanded the second edition of chapter 5 in order to illustrate that connection as well.

Although we make reference to "The Standards" within some of the sections that follow, readers may enjoy locating relevant sections on their own. It is particularly easy and inexpensive to do so now that some of the material is available in electronic form on the internet. Furthermore a committee has been launched that is charged with improving, expanding, and making more accessible future electronic (and CD) versions.

In addition to suggesting that you make use of some of the mentioned material as resources in reading the third edition of The Art of Problem Posing, and in addition to our incorporating some of that material within already existing portions in this edition, we expand on some powerful educational ideas we developed in the second edition with regard to writing in mathematics. In chapter 7, we discuss how the concept of editorial boards and class journals incorporates many of the strategies explored in this book.

At the time we wrote the first edition, there was very little in the way of experimentation with writing in mathematics. Since then, the concept has become more popular at all grade levels. Especially given the emerging concept of writing across the disciplines (not relegated specifically to courses in English

[^8]or history), educators in all fields might wish to adapt parts of this approach in their own field of expertise.

In addition to reflecting on the editorial board scheme by including an interview with Deborah Moore-Russo in chapter 7, we introduce a new format that has deep educational roots and implications-a secular Talmud. It is based on dialogue as well as storytelling as a way of communicating the richness of a field. It encourages a multiplicity of viewpoints within mathematics-a discipline that is frequently and inaccurately touted for its certainty, unambiguity, uncontroversial quality, and linearity of thought. Although new as a mode of secular education, the concept of a mathematical Talmud is borrowed from a tradition that is over two thousand years old. It is a document that has all of the qualities of hypertext and more. We suggest ways in which it can be reconstructed as a secular text-one that is particularly appropriate as a heuristic for problem posing.

In closing (or perhaps opening), what will be particularly interesting to uncover in the various documents we have mentioned in this chapter (including The Art of Problem Posing itself) are efforts to see problem posing in mathematics as a vehicle for understanding how we all view the world in a more personal way. When given the opportunity to pose problems on our own, what sorts of questions do we ask? What level of clarity do we desire? What role does ambiguity play in our thinking? What questions do we avoid? What level of safety do we seek in the questions we ask? To what extent do we feel the need to seek answers to the problems we pose? How closely do we stick to an original source when we employ some of the What-If-Not strategies that encourage us to deviate from a given source? What does it tell us about ourselves as we explore the panorama of question and problems we pose over time? It may in fact take a paradigm switch to be able to find ways of seeing these questions as relevant. We return to these issues in chapter 8 .

Before embarking on your exploration of problem posing, we should mention, as we did in the second edition, that there is a modicum of repetition of key ideas throughout. There are several reasons for this. First, and most importantly, the reader may find a number of these ideas to be novel, and as has been the case in our own experiencing of them, it may take a while to fully appreciate their force. Second (as we recommended in the previous section), readers may enjoy skimming the book at first, and repetition will enable readers to appreciate the saliency of ideas that might not otherwise be noticed at all. Third, most of the key ideas are embedded in the context of specific examples, and what may appear to be a repetition may very well suggest a different nuance in each case. Fourth, the inclination toward sparseness of style is the unfortunate legacy of an elitist view of mathematical exposition-one that prizes sparseness over understanding. Sixth, it is 22 years since we collaborated on the first edition of The Art of Problem Posing, and because 22 years is equivalent to 44 collaboration years, we have become ever so slightly forgetful. Fifth, and most importantly, the reader may find a number of these ideas to be novel, and as has been the case in our own experiencing of them, it may take a while to fully appreciate their force.

In the spirit of problem posing, take any of the preceding reasons, and pose at least one educational problem that it suggests to you.

## 2

## Two Problem-Posing Perspectives: Accepting and Challenging

## A FIRST LOOK; WHAT ARE SOME ANSWERS?

$$
x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}
$$

After looking at the preceding equation, respond to the following:

## "What are some answers?"

We have asked this question of our students and colleagues over the years. Before reading on, you might wish to answer it yourself. Jot down a few responses, and we will then discuss the significance of the question.

## First Question Revisited

What was your reply to the question which opened this chapter? What are some answers? Answers will depend in part on your level of mathematical experience. People who have had very little experience with mathematics frequently respond, "Oh, that reminds me of some statement about right triangles, but I can't remember it exactly."

Those who have had more experience with mathematics sometimes respond with a list like the following:

3,4,5
5, 12, 13
8, 15, 17

Then they remark that they know there are a few other such number triples but they cannot recall them.

Among those who have had a great deal of experience, we have frequently received this sort of list and, in addition, a comment about the potential length of such a list. People suggest how many triples there are and, occasionally, either recall or attempt to generate a formula for them.

People who know more about real or imaginary numbers are often pleased when, almost in a sense of amusement, they produce sets of numbers such as:

$$
2,3, \sqrt{13} \text { or } \mathrm{i}, 1,0
$$

Now look back at all the preceding responses. Notice that something very significant has happened. All the responses to "What are some answers?" assume that a question has been asked by the equation itself. Furthermore, they assume that the specific question asked when we wrote " $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2 "}$ was: "What are some integer solutions (or perhaps real or imaginary ones)?"

Notice, however, that " $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2 "}$ is not in itself a question at all. If anything, it begs for you to ask a question or to pose a problem rather than to answer a question.

It may look as if we are splitting hairs or that we have pulled your leg by setting a trap. Our experience indicates, on the contrary, that we are getting at something important. Perceiving $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ only as an equation that requires solving for $x, y$, and $z$ reveals a very limited perspective. As you read on, you will see that the issues we are getting at open up vast new possibilities for learning in general and for learning mathematics in particular.

Although it is beginning to crumble, there is still an entrenched belief that it is the role of the expert or authority (textbook, teacher, research mathematician) to ask the questions and for the student to try to answer them. ${ }^{1}$ Of course, it is considered good pedagogy to encourage students to ask questions, but too often they are questions of an instrumental nature-questions that enable teachers to pursue their preconceived agendas.

Frequently students are encouraged to ask questions that enable them to better follow well-trodden terrain that has been laid out not only by their teacher, but by the

[^9]mathematics community at large. In grade school, for example, teachers encourage children to ask questions to make sure that they understand existing procedures.

A typical interchange might be:

> Teacher: "Do you understand how to add two-digit numbers?"
> Simcha: "Did you say we have to add from right to left?"
> Teacher: "Good question. Yes. Let me show you what happens if you did it from left to right. Let's do a problem.
"Let's find the sum by adding from left to right but carrying in the way I showed you.

$$
\begin{array}{r}
95 \\
+87 \\
\hline 713
\end{array}
$$

"You see, you get the answer 713, but you know it must be wrong because you can tell the answer must be less than 200 ."

Note that the teacher has not approached the question in a completely arbitrary way, for a reason has been offered other than the teacher's authority for preferring one method over another. Furthermore, it is possible that Simcha's question could lead to some interesting exploration. For example, a teacher could encourage a student to investigate modified strategies for which we could get the correct answer by adding from left to right. Or the teacher and student could explore the extent to which the notation itself imposes one algorithm over another. Nonetheless, students and teachers do not usually ask questions for such purposes; rather, they are interested in making sure that their students understand and can execute what is expected of them.

Such an atmosphere leads neither to understanding the significance of an activity or a procedure, nor does it contribute to the development of a sense of autonomy and independence. Until recently, such qualities have not been advocated as essential components of the mathematics classroom. A focus on problem posing rather than procedural question asking can offer students an opportunity to acquire these qualities.

## A SECOND LOOK AT $\boldsymbol{x}^{\mathbf{2}}+\boldsymbol{y}^{\mathbf{2}}=\boldsymbol{z}^{\mathbf{2}}$

Reconsider $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$. Now let us ask not "What are some answers?" but "What are some questions?" Before reading on, list some of your own questions.

Here are some of the responses people have given at this early stage:

1. Who first discovered it?
2. Are the solutions always integers?
3. How do you prove it?
4. What's the geometric significance of this?

## Loosening Up

In order to loosen up your own thinking processes further at this point and to give them free reign, write down any ideas, not necessarily questions, that occur to you when you look at and think about $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$. No holds barred! We are asking you to free associate and write down any ideas you have.

## Some Typical Observations

Did you write down any statements or questions of the following types?

1. Some famous right triangles are $3,4,5 ; 5,12,13$; and $8,15,17$.

2. The Greeks used knots on a rope to make a right angle.

3. You can use it to introduce irrational numbers.
4. This is associated with the Pythagorean Theorem.
5. It's the only thing I remember from geometry.
6. It reminds me of ladders against a wall.

7. How do you find more triples satisfying $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ ?
8. Is $3,4,5$ considered different from $6,8,10$ or from $30,40,50$ ?
9. It has to do with squares on the sides of a right triangle.

10. What good is any of this?

Notice that even in this small sample of observations, we have a few new ideas for $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ : namely, that it can deal with triangles; that it has a history; and that there are applications of it.

## A NEW PERSPECTIVE

We are not yet done with the equation $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$. In fact, we have hardly begun. Compare the kinds of questions just mentioned with the following list of questions also using $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ as a point of departure:

1. For what integral values of $x, y, z$ is it true that $x^{2}+y^{2}<z^{2}$ ?
2. For what values is it true that $x^{2}+y^{2}=1+z^{2}$ ?
3. What happens to the Pythagorean Theorem if the triangle is not a right triangle? That is, suppose the right angle is replaced by a $60^{\circ}$ angle. How is $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ affected?
4. For what $60^{\circ}$ triangles (i.e., triangles with at least one $60^{\circ}$ angle) can you find three sides that are all integers?
5. If you replace the squares on each side of the triangle by rectangles that are not squares, do the areas on the legs ever add up to the area of the rectangle on the hypotenuse?
6. Is there a three-dimensional analogue for the Pythagorean Theorem?
7. What analogy is there for four-sided figures?

## A Reflection on the Preceding Questions

What are the differences between the thinking shown in the set of questions in " A New Perspective," and the thinking shown in questions and observations we made in the previous subsections?

There are many ways of answering this question. In making such comparisons what we see is very much a function of our idiosyncratic experiences and of the kinds of lenses we are accustomed to use. We could, for example, try to compare the questions with regard to their degree of generality or the sense in which they call for algorithms. Since you do not know where we are headed at this point, it is probably very difficult to get a grasp on what we see as a salient difference between the seven questions just listed and those that preceded them. Nevertheless we urge you to take a stab. Compare the section "Some Typical Observations" with the section "A New Perspective" and see if you can find some differences that mean something to you.

Perhaps you have observed differences of the following kinds:

1. The degree to which you strive only for solutions of the equation $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$.
2. The degree to which you search for literal or narrow interpretation of the equation $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$.
3. The degree to which you risk asking questions for which you may not have a method of solution.
4. The style in which you interpret the mathematics-for example, geometrically or algebraically.

In addition to these four categories (and many others), there is one that has significantly influenced our thinking about problem posing. It is a bit subtle and took us a while to appreciate, although after realizing it, it is hard to imagine that there was a time we did not see it.
5. The degree to which one "accepts" the given.

Notice that sometimes we have essentially accepted the given-in this case $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ and its relationship to the Pythagorean Theorem-and sometimes we have challenged the given in order to ask new questions. We do not, in the latter case, take the given for granted. Rather, the given is a starting point for investigations that modify it. For example, instead of considering $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ and squares on the sides of right triangles, we asked about such forms as $x^{2}+y^{2}=1+z^{2}$ and we replaced squares with rectangles. Although problem posing using each of these perspectives is valuable and necessary, it is challenging the given that frequently opens up new vistas in the way we think. Only after we have looked at something, not as it "is" but as it is turned inside out or upside down, or even only slightly altered, do we gain a better understanding of the implicit assumptions, the context and significance of what is given.

We have refined this notion of challenging the given into a strategy that can be learned, and we have coined the phrase "What-If-Not" to describe it. It is a second phase of problem posing after the earlier one of accepting the given. Ironically, we first begin to gain a deeper understanding of something when we can see it as something else. It is worth keeping in mind that although it is possible to learn a strategy for challenging the given, it is not possible to guarantee (by using any particular procedure) that we will capture those phenomena we later perceive to be most significant. It takes not only insight but courage and sometimes totally new worldviews for anyone to find significant challenges. Merely looking for something to challenge will not guarantee that we will find it. The fact that it has taken such a long time even to realize that there were attitudes to be challenged concerning full-time employment, leisure time, aging, race, and sex roles suggests how difficult it is to perceive that there are things to challenge.

In the next chapter we explore the first phase of problem posing-in which we accept the given-and in chapter 4, we introduce the second phase, the "What-IfNot" approach.

## 3

## The First Phase of Problem Posing: Accepting

In this chapter we explore how we might broaden our outlook on problem posing, by sticking with the given in our exploration. We begin with a number of different kinds of examples. They provide a concrete context in which we can reflect on issues related to this first phase of problem posing.

## STICKING TO THE GIVEN: SOME EXAMPLES

## Example 1. A "Real-Life" Situation: Supreme Court Judges

Several years ago a speaker gave a talk at a meeting of mathematics educators. He began with the following observation:

There are nine Supreme Court Justices. Every year, in an act of cordiality the Supreme Court session begins with each judge shaking hands with every other judge.

He then asked the audience what the obvious question was in this setup. The task appeared to the speaker to be so obvious that he treated his query as a rhetorical question, answered it himself, and proceeded with the talk. What do you think the question was? Well, you might have guessed that his question was, "How many handshakes were there altogether?"

Many of us are blinded to alternative questions we might ask about any phenomenon because we impose a context on the situation, a context that frequently limits the direction of our thinking. We all do this to some extent because
we are influenced by our own experiences and frequently are guided by specific goals (e.g., to teach something about permutations and combinations), even if we may not be aware of having such goals.

The ability to shift context and to challenge what we have taken for granted is as valuable a human experience as creating a context in the first place. With this in mind, what else might you ask in the case of the Supreme Court situation? Some of the questions people have asked, after considerable thought were:

1. Would you predict an even or an odd number of handshakes?
2. Can you come up with a lower limit to the number of handshakes?
3. Is the handshaking task one that is even possible to perform?'
4. Can you come up with a number that is an upper limit to the number of handshakes before attempting an exact calculation?
5. Does a handshake between two people count as one or as two handshakes?
6. If it takes three seconds to shake hands, what is the least amount of time necessary for all the handshakes?
7. If three justices arrive late, how many handshakes still need to be made?
8. If they are sitting two feet apart on one long bench, what is the least amount of walking needed in order for them all to shake hands?
9. If a group of four judges have shaken hands and the remaining five have already done so, how many handshakes remain?

You may have noticed that despite our efforts at extending the range of questions, we have narrowly confined all our questions to mathematical ones. Had we not intended to focus on mathematics, we might well have included such questions as:
10. Does the handshaking have an effect on subsequent cordiality?

Or heretically, we might respond:
11. Isn't that nice? or
12. Who cares?

Although our focus is mathematical, these nonmathematical comments and questions raise an important issue concerning the concept of significance, which we discuss toward the end of this chapter.

[^10]
## Example 2. A Geometric Situation: An Isosceles Triangle

Let us take an example that seems so simple we might doubt that it could lead to new ideas. Assume that we have a triangle in which two sides are equal in lengthan isosceles triangle. What questions could you ask?

Students who have studied geometry often find the following to be "obvious" questions.

1. Why is it called isosceles?
2. How can you prove that the base angles are "equal," i.e., congruent?

List some other questions, without taking into consideration whether or not you are familiar with the answer. In listing your own questions, you might find it worthwhile to ask yourself what made you think of them. Here are a few additional questions that could be asked:

1. How might we classify isosceles triangles? We might, for example, classify them with regard to their vertex angles (e.g., obtuse, right, acute) or the ratio of the lengths of base to side. What other ways can you think of?
2. What types of symmetry does an isosceles triangle have?
3. If one angle of an isosceles triangle is twice another, is the shape of the triangle determined?
4. What relationships exist among the exterior angles of the triangle? How do the exterior angles relate to the interior angles?
5. What was it that encouraged people initially to investigate isosceles triangles?
6. What figures can you make with congruent isosceles triangles? Using two of them? Using three of them? Others? What geometric figures have been created below by replicating an isosceles triangle? Can you make others?

7. Can you make a collection of congruent isosceles triangles into a bicycle hub?

The isosceles triangle is particularly interesting, for unlike the Supreme Court situation, the concept is part of the standard curriculum. Ironically enough, those
who have most recently been exposed to a course in geometry (at almost any level) tend to find great difficulty coming up with much more than observations relating the equality of lengths to the equality of angles, while those who have not studied the subject, or perhaps consider themselves "weak" in mathematics, tend to come up with more robust questions and observations like questions 5-7. What this tells us is that focusing on a topic by studying it in some formal or official sense (finding out what the culture has to say about it) sometimes has the effect of narrowing rather than expanding our view. One way of regarding our schemes for problem generation is as a sensitizing kit to prevent the study of any wellestablished scheme from narrowing our perspective.

## Example 3. Concrete Material: Geoboards

Problem posing can be initiated with almost anything-definitions, theorems, questions, statements, and objects, just to list a few possibilities. Let us turn next to a concrete material, one that has been used in school mathematics-the geoboard [see Figure 1(a)]. This one is a square wooden board with 25 nails in it. It is called a five-by-five board. As is customary, we can make shapes with rubber bands as shown in Figure 1 (b).

The geoboard has an appeal to the uninitiated student as well as to the sophisticated one. People have written many books, articles, and guides for its use. What would you do with it? Give yourself a minute to think.

Most of the books suggest particular questions or problems with varying amounts of detail and at various levels of sophistication. A standard elementary task would be:

1. Using rubber bands, make a number of different shapes on the board.


FIG. 1

A harder problem might be:
2. Taking the smallest square as a unit, find the area of shapes created in answer to Task 1.

Significantly more sophisticated questions would be:
3. Given only the number of nails inside and on the boundary of any shape created in Figure 1(b), can you determine what the figure looks like? What the area is? ${ }^{2}$
4. How many noncongruent squares can you make on a five-by-five geoboard?

Notice that in all these questions or tasks, the given, the geoboard, was accepted as is. Although we could make even the preceding list almost endless, we will open up even more ways of asking questions about a geoboard in chapter 4 when we approach the task from the perspective of challenging the given.

## Example 4. Looking at Data: Primitive Pythagorean Triples

In chapter 2 , we saw that $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ often triggers "the answers" $3,4,5 ; 5,12,13$; $7,24,25$; even before a question has been asked. This time let us accept the assumed question, "For what whole numbers is it true that $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$ ?" A partial list of ordered primitive Pythagorean triples ${ }^{3}$ is shown in Table 1.

Starting with this table what questions, observations, or hypotheses can you make after studying the data?

[^11]

[^12]
## TABLE 1 <br> Partial List of Ordered Primitive Pythagorean Triples

| $x$ | $y$ | $z$ |
| ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 5 | 12 | 13 |
| 7 | 24 | 25 |
| 8 | 15 | 17 |
| 9 | 40 | 41 |
| 12 | 35 | 37 |

One of our classes came up with the following list.

1. It appears that sometimes $z=y+1$, sometimes $z=y+2$.
2. Is $z$ always odd?
3. Is $z$ always either a prime or divisible by 5?
4. $x$ and $y$ seem to have different parity (i.e., one is odd and the other even).
5. Is $y$ always divisible by 4 or 5 ?
6. If $x$ is odd, $z=y+1$.
7. If $x$ is even, $z=y+2$.
8. Every triple has one element divisible by 5 and one by 4 .
9. Are there other cases besides the 40 ( in the $9,40,41$ triple) where one element is divisible by 4 and 5? And can one predict where they appear?
10. It looks as if $x$ will run through many of the odd integers.
11. Can you get a triple for any value of x you choose? What about $y$ ? $z$ ? Which ones can't you get?
12. Will every multiple of 5 occur somewhere in the table?
13. It looks as if $z=y+1$ implies $y+z=x^{2}$.
14. If $x$ is even, $z+y=x^{2} / 2$.
15. $z$ 's appear all to be of the form $4 n+1$.
16. Listing only those triples for which $z=y+1$, is it always true that any two $y$ 's differ by the same amount as any two $z$ 's?
17. For a fixed $x$, are $y$ and $z$ always unique? Same with a fixed $z$ ?

Our point in choosing the Pythagorean triples as data is to show that such data are frequently a wealthy source for generating new questions. The issue goes deeper than that, however. People with a mathematical bent who take a look at the partial list of triples frequently focus exclusively on the search for some formula that might generate the entire list. Although some of the questions we have listed have the possibility of heading us in that direction, not all of them do. That is, there are many surprising observations-like number 8 on the list-that appear to have no obvious connection with a search for a formula to create all triples.

## Example 5. Simple Number Sequence

There is something mysterious about the data in Table 1 for most people who first stumble on them. Even if you suppress the desire to figure out how the sequence triples might be generated by a formula, there is still a nagging puzzlement about the source of it all, and we tend to be pulled in that direction even if we allow for occasional diversions. But even simple data whose generating formulas are not in question can be a source of surprise and marvel, provided we assume a problem-posing stance. Suppose we list a sequence such as $9,16,23,30,37,44$, $51,58, \ldots$. What questions and observations come to your mind?

A possible list might include:

1. The difference between the numbers is 7 .
2. The first two numbers are perfect squares. Are there more perfect squares in this sequence? When does the next one occur? How many are there?
3. What is the $n^{\text {th }}$ term?
4. If we subtract 2 from each number, it is just the 7 times table.
5. If we add 5 to each number it is almost the 7 times table!
6. Two numbers of the list given are prime. As you extend the sequence will there be an infinite number of primes?
7. The numbers alternate between ones that are odd and even.
8. There is a number in the sequence that is divisible by 2 , a number divisible by 3 , one by 4 , one by 5 , by 6 , but not one by 7 . Is 7 the only exception?
9. Do all digits from 0 to 9 occur in the units place? Tens place?
10. Is there a pattern to the last digits?
11. Can you tell quickly if 1938 appears in the list?

As in the case of the isosceles triangle example, here is something that is included in standard curriculum under the topic of arithmetic progressions. Blinded by the realization that some things are already well known about this kind of sequence (that is, how it is created and how it grows), many people incorrectly conclude that there is nothing more to find out. Questions such as numbers $6,8,9$, and 10 , however, suggest that beneath the surface of our pedestrian sequence we can find some surprising implications. Although we may have explored arithmetic sequences in general, we have not explored this one in particular, and every special case has a world within it that is not covered by the general investigation.

## SOME REFLECTIONS ON PHENOMENA TO INVESTIGATE

What have we explored so far in this chapter? Specifically, we have looked at five examples, but it would help to find a way of classifying them in order to help us come up with many others.

Let us begin by asking what we normally select for carrying out an investigation. Since, in the eyes of most people who design curriculum, mathematics is about propositions, the starting point (sometimes disguised or diluted) is usually a collection of statements-definitions, axioms, theorems, and the like. We make statements and try to prove them.

What else might we use other than propositions? Look at examples 2 and 3 of this chapter. What we have in each case is an object - one of them abstract and the other concrete. In example 1, we have something closer to a situation. Objects and situations then may be helpful starting points for generating new questions.

We have also selected data as a starting point for investigation in examples 4 and 5. In example 5 the data are generated explicitly by a formula ( $y=7 x-2$ for $x$ a natural number); in example 4 they are generated by an implicit formula $\left(x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}\right)$.

Once we have acquired data by whatever method, we can view the data as taking on a life of their own. We can thus focus on more than the origin of the data. That is, we are in a position to ask questions that do not necessarily focus on methods of generating the data. Now that we are aware of the variety of objects about which we might pose problems, what strategies might we use to generate questions?

## STRATEGIES FOR PHASE-ONE PROBLEM GENERATION

## Things to Do With Phenomena

Exploration of something, whether it be a concrete object (geoboard), an abstract object (an isosceles triangle), data, or a theorem itself, can take many forms. What have we done so far that enables us to generate problems? We have done more than just ask questions. Sometimes we have made observations. At other times we came up with conjectures. Frequently these observations or conjectures themselves can lead to questions and vice versa.

Let us look at example 4—primitive Pythagorean triples. One observation was:
4. $x$ and $y$ seem to have different parity.

A question following this observation might be, "Can you find a primitive Pythagorean triple in which this is not the case?" This question is generated by an observation; other questions are generated by conjectures-perhaps based on apparent regularity or predictability, coupled with the desire to find out if that appearance is realized. Especially with regard to data, but applicable in other areas as well, a helpful heuristic for seeing things in new ways would be to separate out

1. the making of observations,
2. the asking of questions, and
3. the coming up with conjectures.

It is the eventual intertwining of these three activities that creates the force that enables us to see beyond "a glass darkly."

One strategy then for phase-one problem generation involves an attempt to focus on observations, conjectures, and questions without being concerned with interrelating them at first. Eventually, however, we may attempt to do so. As you read on, you will see how the various phases of problem posing enrich many facets of understanding, doing, and learning mathematics.

## Internal Versus External Exploration

It is perhaps a legacy of our technological society that when we see something new, we are more inclined to ask how its parts fit together than how it (taken as a whole in some vague way) might relate to other phenomena. To look at an automobile internally is to ask questions about how its parts fit together. To ask questions about it externally, however, is to suggest not only that we explore how one automobile relates to others, but how the automobile as a class relates to other means of transportation or other phenomena like the quality of life in society. ${ }^{4}$

Notice that in the beginning of our exploration of the isosceles triangle in example 2, we questioned internal workings. We assumed that the object of our concern was how the pieces of one isosceles triangle interacted with each other in isolation from other triangles. We asked, for example, about the symmetry of the triangle. We did not consider taking the triangle as a single object to be related to other such triangles until we asked the question: What figures can you make with two or even three or more congruent isosceles triangles? (question 6).

Looking back at this question, we notice that it frees us from the restriction of looking only at internal workings-a restriction we often impose on ourselves without realizing it. Appreciating that we have explored one external type of question enables us to search for others. In the Supreme Court case, for example, we might ask what the consequences would be if three members of the legislature were to join the nine judges and the judges were expected to greet the members of the legislature by handshaking.

Such external type of investigation was done in the case of the isosceles triangle example when, instead of exploring the workings of one such triangle, we combined triangles as already described. Further external investigation might lead us to relate the isosceles triangle to other figures-to determine, perhaps, how they might be combined with each other in the creation of patterns. We could even move

[^13]beyond the relationship of such patterns in mathematics and include domains of inquiry such as art, architecture, and other areas as well.

## Exact Versus Approximate Explorations

An important strategy for exploring a problem stems from the notion that we need not necessarily aim for exact answers. Notice that in the Supreme Court example, a number of questions were directed at efforts to approximate answers, even before exact calculations were suggested. It is extremely important mathematically as well as intellectually to appreciate that there are times not only when it is unnecessary and undesirable to get exact answers, but when it is impossible to do so. It would be worthwhile to take a look once more at many of the questions we have posed in this chapter to determine what would be lost by searching not for an exact answer, but for an approximation instead. Take some of these questions and try to modify them, so that they are transformed from a request for a precise response to one for an approximate response. You might try to relate this activity both to any other mathematical activity you may be involved with, and to your nonmathematical life as well. How much is lost by searching for a less exact analysis or a less precise strategy?

## Historical Exploration: Actual Versus Hypothetical

In this subsection, we suggest how it is possible to generate significant questions by making use of historical ways of thinking, despite the fact that you may not be a historian and may, in fact, know very little about the history of the idea or phenomenon under investigation.

In the case of isosceles triangle, we asked the question: What was it that encouraged people initially to investigate isosceles triangles? (question 5). An exploration of this question would involve the study of history-something that requires an expertise that few of us have. It is possible, however, to slightly modify these questions so we need not be historians. We could let our imaginations have free reign and consider what might have been the historical antecedents. For example, we could ask:

What might have encouraged people to investigate isosceles triangles?
or
What might have accounted for people's interest in the Pythagorean relation?
With regard to the first question, one reasonable answer might be that it was merely an effort at classification. Another might be that a special kind of triangle
enabled people to get a handle on conjectures that were hard to prove in general. The importance of asking and searching for answers to these questions is that such inquiry forces us not merely to prove things, but rather to locate the significance of a topic we are asked to investigate. The importance of this issue is raised in an anecdote of Edwin Moïse. He commented:

> A distinguished algebraist once served as an examiner in a final oral for the doctorate, based on a dissertation on Banach algebras. Toward the end of the examination, the algebraist asked the student to describe some examples of Banach algebras. The student was able ... to name one example, but his one example was trivial. ${ }^{5}$

As Moïse pointed out, although the dissertation director could have justified the student's research, the student-who had solved a number of mathematical problems-had no good intellectual reason for working on those problems in the first place.

Yet all of us know good problem solvers who do not necessarily appreciate the significance of the activity in which they are engaged. We recall our experience with Jordan, a bright young man who was confused by what the ambiguous case in trigonometry was all about. Trying to put the issue in perspective, he was reminded of his prior geometry course in which he had investigated those conditions under which a triangle was determined (S.A.S., A.S.A., S.S.S., or A.S.S.- which is the ambiguous case). He was confused for a while and finally complained, "What do you mean? We never studied how a triangle is determined. We only did things like prove that two triangles were congruent if S.A.S. = S.A.S." Here is a beautiful example of an honor student who could prove a great deal, but had little appreciation for why it was significant for him to prove these things. He never realized that a major purpose of such congruence theorems was to determine the minimum amount of information needed for a particular purpose. We wonder how many other students do not realize the power of congruence theorems in reducing the number of pieces of information needed to be sure that two triangles are congruent. One can lead students to understand this by putting a cost on each piece of information needed so that instead of having to pay for six items (three sides and three angles) to ensure congruence, a maximum of three suffices. Some students may also want to investigate what other pieces of information (besides angles and sides of triangles) could be given to completely determine a triangle.

To look at the significance of something, then, is not only to prove things or to investigate them more generally, but to try to figure out why they are worth investigating in the first place. While we would all be hard pressed to explore everything we engage in from the perspective of whether or not and why it may be significant, we certainly do see things differently when we ask questions of that

[^14]sort. Pseudo-history thus becomes one more tool that we can use to generate a set of questions that enable us to search for significance.

## A Handy List of Questions

If we look back at some of the questions we have asked in this chapter and incorporate others that we and our students have used in much of our mathematical explorations, we arrive at a list of general questions that could provide yet one more point of departure for problem generation even at this early stage. These questions do not apply to specific content; instead, they are a master list. Alhough some of these questions might be incorporated into some of our other problem posing strategies, they are nevertheless valuable as an independent starting point of their own. We list a number of these starting questions with the understanding that they will provide a handy point of departure for you. This list is not complete, of course, and never can be. As you go through this book, you will want to add other questions of your own. It will be interesting, at various points in your reading, to look back at your expanded list to see which kinds of questions you tend to favor. Perhaps you might enjoy comparing your favorites with those of a colleague or classmate.

Here is a beginning list generated in one of our classes.

A List of Questions
Is there a formula?
What is the formula?
What purpose does the formula serve?
What is the number of objects or cases satisfying this condition?
What is the maximum?
What is the minimum?
What is the range of the answer?
Is there a pattern here?
What is the pattern in this case?
Is there a counterexample?
Can it be extended?
Does it exist?
Is there a solution?
Can we find the solution?
How can we condense the information?
Can we make a table?

Can we prove it?
When is it false? When true?
Is it constant?
What is constant; what is variable?
Does it depend on something we can specify?
Is there a limiting case?
What is the domain?
Where does the proof break down in an analogous situation?
Is there a uniting theme?
Is it relevant?
Are we imposing any restrictions without intending to do so?
When is it relevant?
What does it remind you of?
How can one salvage what appears to be a breakdown?
How can you view it geometrically?
How can you view it algebraically?
How can you view it analytically?
What do they have in common?
What do I need in order to prove this?
What are key features of the situation?
What are the key constraints currently being imposed on the situation?
Does viewing actual data suggest anything interesting?
How does this relate to other things?
Many people have made and used their own rich questions in their writings. As you read journal articles and other books, we encourage you to make a list of both explicit and implicit questions that authors ask themselves, that occur repeatedly, that are rich and that you particularly like. ${ }^{6}$

A word of caution is necessary for anyone using our list (yours, or anyone else's) or trying to teach problem posing and solving with it. It is necessary to understand the special circumstances of a situation that might make it appropriate to use preconceived lenses to illuminate that situation. It might be foolish to apply some of these questions in certain circumstances. On the other hand, we should be equally

[^15]aware that a nonsensical-sounding question might apply if we were willing to modify what might be our own rigid mind set.

Mathematics itself is studded with examples of questions that appeared to be foolish or inapplicable due to a vision that was limited. A question like "If we take the side of a square to have unit length, how many times longer is the diagonal than its side?" was essentially a nonquestion for those unable to associate the diagonal of a square with a number. The question "How can I show that Euclid's fifth postulate does not follow from his others?" was not asked for over 2000 years because people were so committed to it being an inconceivable possibility. Even when we are convinced that a question such as "Which is more prime: 181 or 191?" is meaningless, frequently a slight modification of the question will bring it into line.

Although we are not suggesting that every nonsensical question eventually incorporated (perhaps modified) in a given situation will guarantee historic posterity, it is possible that some worthwhile insight could follow. The next chapter demonstrates how such questions can be the catalyst for valuable reflection even for topics in a standard curriculum.

## 4

## The Second Phase of Problem Posing: "What-If-Not"



## SEEING WHAT IS IN FRONT OF YOU

Do we always "see" what is in front of us? The most obvious things are frequently those most hidden from us. Sometimes it takes a bit of a rude awakening for us to appreciate what is right before us and, often some kind of reorganization or shift of perspective leads us to see the obvious. For instance, a personal disaster may have the ironic effect of enabling us to see love, friendship, and blessings that may not have been perceived beforehand.

You most likely have had experience in problem solving that illustrates this point. On a perceptual level, you might take the drawing in Figure 2 as an example.

[^16]

FIG. 2.

What is it a picture of? Most people will say that it is six equilateral triangles or a hexagon with the diagonals drawn in. Very few people will see it as a drawing of something three-dimensional, although occasionally a few people see it as the top of a tent. Sometimes the suggestion that it might be three-dimensional is enough to trigger an "ah-ha" response, as the person shifts perspective to see it as a cube. Of course, there are many additional ways of interpreting this drawing.

On a more cognitive level, perhaps one of the most famous "ah-ha" solutions was Gauss's recognition that the sum:

$$
1+2+3+4+\ldots+97+98+99+100
$$

can be calculated easily by noticing that we can consider the series as many pairs of numbers summing to 101 .


The shift of visual and cognitive perspectives may appear so obvious once we achieve it that we may not appreciate that the task was a nontrivial one.

It is one thing to appreciate something from a fresh point of view; it is another to show that such a fresh point of view can be productive. For example, inductive evidence suggests that $x^{2}-x+41$ generates only prime numbers for successive natural numbers for $x$, thus strengthening the belief that the formula yields only prime numbers. It works for $x=1,2,3,4,5,6, \ldots, 31,32,33$, and more. That's quite a string of successes. A shift of perspective, however, is quite revealing. If we ask explicitly "For what value of $x$ might the formula break down?" we see the limitations of the formula faster than if we attempt to search for positive evidence. Alas, we can see with essentially no calculation that it breaks down at $x=41$. Virtually no calculation is needed beyond the observation that for $x=41$, we are left
with $41^{2}$, which cannot be a prime since it has at least three divisors (which are?). Of course a change in perspective is not always accompanied by an "ah-ha" experience (although it sometimes is) nor need it be productive.

It is ironic that it is so difficult for us to see what supposedly stares us in the face, because so much of mathematical thinking begins with the assumption that we take the "given" for granted. We are trained to begin a proof by first stating and accepting what is given. If we are asked to prove in a right triangle, with right angle at C , that $c^{2}=a^{2}+b^{2}$, we begin by assuming that we have a right triangle with sides $a, b, c$, and for this kind of proof, a clear statement of the given is a necessary first step.

But all of this training hides several very important points about mathematical thinking. First of all, in most contexts (except those that have been contrived in classrooms) it is not always so easy to see what should be given. What we decide to take as given depends on our purposes, available intellectual tools, aesthetic desires, and so forth. For example, many people are familiar with the fact that it is impossible, in general, to trisect an angle-one of three well known classical problems of antiquity. The proof of the impossibility of trisection, depends in some not so obvious ways upon "the given" that construction is to be done with a straight edge and a pair of compasses. If we assume the use of an implement known as a tomahawk, however, it is easy to prove that it is possible to trisect any angle. ${ }^{2}$ It is a fascinating issue to locate where in the proof using a tomahawk we violate the assumptions of the Euclidean instruments. It is also worth thinking about why Euclidean tools were considered sacred.

Second, taking the given for granted usually assumes that our job is one of proving something based on the given. But there is certainly much more to mathematics than proving things. Coming up with a new idea, finding an appropriate image to enable us to hold on to an old one, evaluating the significance of an idea we may have already learned, or seeing new connections are also reasonable mathematical activities. For these and many other activities, we need a different notion than that of merely specifying and accepting the given as it is used in problem solving.

## ATTRIBUTE LISTING FOR A NEW PROBLEM POSING STRATEGY

How can we go beyond accepting the given? First we try to specify what we see as "the given," although as we indicated earlier this is sometimes more difficult to do than we would imagine. Let us illustrate what we mean, first by using a theorem, and then by using a concrete material.

[^17]
## Using A Theorem

Let us go back to the Pythagorean theorem as an illustration. What is given? As suggested in the previous section, we are asking for many different possible interpretations of what is in front of us. How would you describe the Pythagorean theorem?

The following is a list of some of the responses to the question that we have received.

1. The statement is a theorem.
2. The theorem deals with lengths of line segments.
3. The theorem deals with right triangles.
4. The theorem deals with areas.
5. The theorem deals with squares.
6. There are three variables associated with the Pythagorean theorem.
7. The variables are related by an equals sign.
8. There is a plus sign between two of the variables.
9. There are three exponents all of which are the same.
10. The exponents are positive integers.

We can call the 10 preceding statements some attributes of the theorem. In what ways do the first five statements differ from the other five? At first glance, it seems as if the first five resulted from viewing the theorem geometrically, whereas the last five statements viewed it algebraically. We realize, however, that more is involved because in some cases we deal with the logic of the statement, while in others we focus on the form of the statement.

These kinds of distinctions point out that there are many ways of seeing the given. Regardless of these distinctions, what have we done so far? We have chosen as an example a theorem-the Pythagorean theorem—and we have made a list of some of its attributes. Different people will obviously produce different lists. Note that the list of attributes can never be complete and that the attributes need not be independent of each other. That is, we might have listed as attributes the fact that the theorem has a long and interesting history, or the triangle has a right angle and the fact that the two acute angles add up to $90^{\circ}$. We call the listing of attributes Level I of our scheme, and the branches of Figure 3 indicate a few of the attributes.

This is just the beginning of our scheme. Before continuing, let us demonstrate further what we mean by attributes by choosing a second, different type of starting point: concrete material instead of an abstract theorem.

## Concrete Material: Geoboards

We now return to the concrete material that we introduced in chapter 3, the geoboard, to develop the scheme suggested in Figure 3.

Examine the geoboard in Figure 4. How would you describe it?


FIG. 3.


FIG. 4.

Some people might say that there are 25 nails arranged in a square array; others might mention that the board is white. Various attributes we have heard mentioned include:

1. The board is square.
2. The markings are regularly spaced.
3. The markings are spaced along square lattice points.
4. The markings are nails.
5. The additional objects are rubber bands.
6. The board is $5 \times 5$-that is, it has 25 nails on it.
7. The board is rigid.
8. The markings on this board are only on one side of the board.
9. The nails are all of the same height.
10. The board is stationary (unless picked up and moved).
11. The board is simply connected.

You might well be thinking that attribute 10 is silly or that attribute 4 is irrelevant. However, apparently silly or irrelevant attributes may lead to worthwhile investigation. The question of which attributes are significant is not always easy to answer beforehand, and furthermore it is difficult to make such a judgment unless you have some idea of the purpose of the board. For example, we would expect the yoga expert to answer this question differently from the mathematician. Similarly, although we might not consider the whiteness of the board to be an important variable, the fact that the board is all the same color (or that the color could be varied within a given geoboard) might be significant. Someone who is interested in topological problems might find color to be a salient attribute-as in the case of the famous four-color problem. In any case, it is better to include an attribute that might not be useful than exclude one that, with further reflection might be. In short, when in doubt, leave it in!

You may wish at this point to draw a schematic diagram for the geoboard that is analogous to the one we drew for the Pythagorean theorem (Figure 3). You might now be asking, "Where does this Level I attribute listing lead?" In order to demonstrate its power, let us further explore the geoboard. In the final sections of this chapter, we return to the Pythagorean theorem in order to apply and expand on strategies we have suggested here.

## NOW WHAT? A LOOK AT THREE ATTRIBUTES OF GEOBOARDS

If we vary the attribute of squareness for geoboards, what alternatives come to mind? Consider the following four possibilities:
circular

triangular



So, by allowing our imaginations free reign and modifying squareness as an attribute, we came up with circular, triangular, washer shaped and rectangular geoboards.

Notice that in all the shapes generated so far, we have employed a hidden assumption: flatness. This suggests that flatness may be another attribute to vary, and it is not one we listed before. We may also notice that all the shapes are finite and bounded. Although squareness and flatness may be immediately obvious attributes of the board, the latter two attributes are less apparent and, as a matter of fact, became obvious to us only after we attempted to vary squareness and flatness. Thus, not only does looking for a new variation of an attribute suggest new geoboards, but it suggests additional attributes of the initial one as well.

## An Alternative to Squareness: Circularity

Consider a circular geoboard. Let us change only the shape of the board and not the spacing of the nails. In asking how this board differs from the square geoboard, we realize that it is essentially a square geoboard with certain nails removed. This leads us to consider the question, "How many nails would be eliminated if we were to cut the largest circular board out of an $n \times n$ one? ${ }^{33}$ Clearly, for $2 \times 2$ board all four nails would be eliminated to form a circle. [Figure 5(a)].

For a $3 \times 3$ geoboard [Figure 5(b)], four of the nine nails disappear. For a $4 \times 4$ board [Figure 5 (c)], 12 nails are removed. You might want to see what happens in a $5 \times 5$ board. We summarize our exploration in Table 2.

It would be worthwhile (partly because the answer is not apparent) for you to predict the number of nails that would remain on an $n \times n$ geoboard that is cut into the largest possible circle. Although this problem has been generated within the context of a new kind of geoboard, it is worth realizing that this same question can be analyzed in the case of a standard geoboard. For example, instead of rubber bands as an adjunct of the standard geoboard, we could use wire circles and ask, "What is the maximum number of nails that can be enclosed by a wire circle on the board?"

Now let us turn to another variation of the geoboard. We start by challenging the attribute that the markings are placed along square lattice points.

## An Alternative to Square Lattice Points: Shearing

Suppose the nails are not placed as a square lattice, but conform to the shape of the figure as in the sheared one shown in Figure 6.

[^18]

FIG. 5.

TABLE 2
The Largest Circular Geoboard Cut From a Square Geoboard

| Size of Square <br> Board | Number of Nails <br> on Square Board | Number of Nails <br> Eliminated | Number of Nails <br> on Circular Board |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1 \times 1$ | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $2 \times 2$ | 4 | 4 | 0 |
| $3 \times 3$ | 9 | 4 | 5 |
| $4 \times 4$ | 16 | 12 | 4 |
| $5 \times 5$ | 25 | 12 | 13 |
| $6 \times 6$ | 36 | 20 | 16 |
| $7 \times 7$ | 49 | 20 | 29 |
| $8 \times 8$ | 64 | 32 | 32 |
| $9 \times 9$ | 81 | 32 | 49 |



FIG. 6.

Do new questions suggest themselves to you, now that we are looking at a different board? Do any of the new questions have meaning for the initial $5 \times 5$ board? For which questions will the answers be the same for the square lattice as well as for the sheared one?

Let us compare the two boards by looking at one example in more detail. We can think of our geoboard as graph paper and consider the two edges as our axes. Suppose we label the axes in both cases $\square$ and $\Delta$. In addition, we have drawn in two lines. Notice that the pairs of lines are analogously placed in each diagram. See Figures 7 and 8.

In what ways can we compare these two lines in the two diagrams? ${ }^{4}$ We could ask, "How do the equations of these lines compare? How do their points of intersection compare?" In what other ways could we compare the boards?

We might consider regions, for instance. Now, draw any polygonal region on the square lattice board, and imagine that you have sheared the square lattice board. Now draw this new shape on the sheared board. Choosing a square as a unit for the square board, decide how you would analogously define a unit of area on the


FIG. 7.

[^19]

FIG. 8.
sheared board. What is the area of the new sheared figure and how does it compare with the old one?

In the two examples just given, we have in effect asked whether or not a rearrangement of lattice points alters the answer to the questions we pose. Can it make the original question meaningless? Here we can even ask a question that arises out of a direct comparison of the two boards and that goes beyond analogy. For example, if you place the square geoboard in Figure 7 on top of the sheared geoboard in Figure 8 so that the bottom row of nails coincides, will any other nails coincide? Does the answer depend on the angle of shear? (Assume here that the same unit of length is chosen along axes for Figures 7 and 8.)

To continue to see how exploring alternatives to an attribute can lead to new ideas, we next consider in some detail one other attribute of the standard geoboard--that of finiteness.

## An Alternative to Finiteness: Infinite Boards

What kinds of phenomena are suggested when we consider finiteness as a variable, while maintaining most of the other attributes of the geoboard? The board can obviously be infinite (and also unbounded) in a number of essentially different ways, though no physical model of it can exist. What would be your first reaction to drawing an infinite geoboard?

Figure 9 shows several different ways in which we might represent an infinite board.

Figures 9(a), (b), and (c) respectively depict half plane, full plane, and quarter plane infinite lattices. In Figure $9(\mathrm{~d})$, we vary the quarter plane lattice by changing the number of degrees in the angle between the axes. There are, of course, other kinds of variations that lead to an infinite array.


FIG. 9.

Let us focus here on one model, Figure 9(c). One fanciful way of interpreting it is as an infinite orchard with trees equally spaced. ${ }^{5}$ Let each dot represent a tree (with no thickness, as a start). Suppose a man (who also has taken the ultimate diet pill) is sitting at the origin. Let us suppose further that his vision is limited to straight-line paths from the origin, and that any tree along a line of vision blocks trees behind it (on the same line of vision). There are a number of questions that relate to this phenomenon. For example:

1. Given a tree in the lattice, is it visible or blocked?
2. Does every line of vision hit a tree somewhere (perhaps far off) on the lattice?
3. Can the person at the origin systematically number the trees $(1,2,3, \ldots)$ so that given any number no matter how large, he can tell where in the orchard the tree associated with that number is located?
4. Suppose the man is placed on a rotating wheel chair at the origin and he is spun in a random fashion within lines of vision of the quarter plane.
[^20]What is the probability that when his chair stops, his line of vision will have no trees along it?

People who respond in the affirmative to question 2 would most likely be in for a shock when they learn that the answer to question 4 is $1 .{ }^{6}$ You may wish to think of additional questions that involve many other variations or topics. You might, for example, wish to reconsider questions of this sort once we allow for thickness of the trees. Also, what new questions are suggested, and how are answers to the previous ones modified if the person in the quarter plane is no longer seated at the origin? How do things change if the man also relinquishes taking his diet pills?

## WHAT HAVE WE DONE?

Look at Figure 3 once more. Recall that previously we chose a theorem and then listed attributes. This time we selected a concrete material, the geoboard, and looking directly at the geoboard as an object, we listed attributes. There were many of them (such as the board is square, the board is finite, ...). We thought of many of the attributes when we first began the exploration, while others occurred to us only later. We depict what we have done with attribute listing on the geoboard in Figure 10. (You might find it useful to compare it to the scheme depicted in Figure 3.) In Figure 10 we indicate by "..." that there are many attributes we have not yet listed.

We have, however, done more than this chart would imply. Not only have we asked, "What are some attributes?" but we have also asked, "What are some alternatives to any given attribute?" We have also asked additional questions concerning the new attributes.

So after listing some attributes of the geoboard depicted as Level I, we asked for each attribute "What-If-Not?" that attribute. For example, for Attribute 1, "The board is square" we asked, "What if the board were not square?" We designate this "What-If-Not?" question asking as Level II(a). What other shape could the board be? Some answers were that the board is circular, or triangular. We designate these answers as Level II(b). We depict these first two levels of our scheme in Figure 11. It was in this way that we were led to consider:

[^21]

FIG. 10.


FIG. 11.

- A circular geoboard.
- The sheared arrangement of nails.
- An "infinite" array of nails.

Notice that in Level II of Figure 11 we have only indicated one "What-If-Not" for each of the two attributes. Under squareness, for example, we listed only one alternative-circularity. Of course, we could have considered any other alternative to squareness (such as rectangular shaped or washer shaped) and pursued it in depth, too.

But what does it mean to pursue something in depth in this context? It means to ask a question about it as a start. Notice in the case of the circular geoboard we asked only one question, whereas in the case of an infinite board we asked many. You may wish to return to the circular board and ask further questions. In order to generate questions, we can make use of all of the strategies for question asking that we indicated in chapter 3. This step of question asking that comes after listing attributes, and asking "What-If-Not" for any particular attribute, is the next step in our scheme, and we call it Level III. So far, then, we have demonstrated three levels in our scheme: Level I (list attributes), Level II (ask for each one, "What if it were not so?" and give some alternatives), and finally Level III (pose questions).

In Figure 11, we have simplified the process by listing only a few attributes and by suggesting one alternative for each of two attributes. In Figure 12, we have indicated the asking of questions (Level III). You might wish to sketch just the branches for one attribute, two alternatives, and two new questions on these alternatives! Of course we have provided the diagram only to help explain our scheme; when actually using the scheme, there is no need to draw a diagram.

## A RETURN TO THE PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM

## "What-If-Not" on Some Attributes

Now that we have the first few stages of our problem posing scheme, let us reconsider the Pythagorean theorem. Look again at our list of the attributes of the Pythagorean theorem (Level I of our scheme in Figure 3). How can we use this list of attributes to help us pose new problems? We can use the same strategies as we just did for the geoboard and follow through the same steps.

## Beginning the "What-If-Not" Strategy

What did we do in the case of the geoboard after we listed attributes? We took an attribute and asked "What-If-Not" that attribute. We now do the same for the attributes of the Pythagorean theorem. We illustrate this second step (Level II) by


FIG. 12.
using several attributes as an example. Although it is not essential at this point, if you find it helpful to keep track of the scheme as it unfolds, you may wish to look ahead at Figure 13. It will surely be helpful when you get to the section entitled "Brainstorming on One Changed Attribute."

Attribute 1. The statement is a theorem. How else could we construe the statement? What if it were not a theorem? What could it be?

Just to ask such a question is in many cases a bold move-one that takes courage! Great advances in knowledge have taken place by people who have had the courage to look at a cluster of attributes and to ask, "What-If-Not?" As we mentioned earlier, perhaps the most famous such instance in mathematics involves the development of non-Euclidean geometry. Up through the 18th century, mathematicians had tried in vain to prove the parallel postulate as a theorem. It took 2000 years before mathematicians were prepared to even ask the question, "What if it were not the case that through a given external point there was exactly one line parallel to a given line? What if there were at least two? None? What would that do to the structure of geometry?"

Cantor's work on countability (alluded to earlier in the infinite orchard) is another example of the intellectual leaps someone can make by questioning "obvious" givens. Great advances in modern science from Harvey (What if it were not the case that a great quantity of blood was constantly produced and dissipated into the body cavity?) to Einstein (What if time and space were not absolute, independent entities?) have depended in part on "What-If-Not" formulations of a problem. Some people have even been burned at the stake or have taken hemlock for "What-If-Not" formulations of an idea!

Return to Attribute 1: The statement is a theorem. How could one answer "What-If-Not" in this case? Let us symbolize alternatives by ( $\sim 1$ ), which means "not attribute $1 . "$ Let us label the various alternatives by subscripts such as $(\sim 1)_{2}$.
$(\sim 1)_{1} \quad$ Construe the statement as a definition.
$(\sim 1)_{2} \quad$ Construe the statement as an axiom.
$(\sim 1)_{3} \quad$ Assume the statement is false, i.e., $a^{2}+b^{2} \neq c^{2}$ (as, for example, in non-Euclidean geometry).

Does it seem far-fetched to construe the Pythagorean theorem as an axiom? Some people have pursued the consequences of choosing the theorem as an axiom. Even just listing this alternative increases our awareness of the statement as a theorem.

Before picking an alternative to examine carefully, let us continue to increase our options by listing "What-If-Not" alternatives for the other attributes of the Pythagorean theorem.

[^22]Attribute 2. The theorem deals with lengths of the three sides. What if it did not deal with lengths of the sides? Focusing on length, we might choose the following formulations for "What-If-Not" Attribute 2.
$(\sim 2)_{\mathrm{i}} \quad$ Consider half-lengths of the sides.
$(\sim 2)_{2} \quad$ Look at various projections of the three sides.
$(\sim 2)_{3}$ Look at the orientation of the three sides.
Attribute 3. The theorem deals with a right triangle. What if the theorem did not deal with right triangles? What else could it be?
$(\sim 3), \quad$ Consider an acute triangle.
$(\sim 3)_{2}$ Consider an obtuse triangle.
Although it may seem absurd at first, let us not rule out listing the following cases because they might prove fruitful:
$(\sim 3)_{3}$ A straight angle "triangle."
$(-3)_{4}$ A reflex "triangle."
$(-3)_{5}$ Consider a right four-sided figure (notice here we refocused our attention from "right" to "triangle" as something to vary).

Attribute 4. The theorem deals with areas.
$(\sim 4)$ Suppose it deals with volume.
$(\sim 4)_{2}$ Consider higher (or lower) dimensions.
Attribute 5. The theorem deals with squares.
$(\sim 5)_{1} \quad$ Consider rectangles on the sides.
$(\sim 5)_{2}$ Consider triangles on the sides.
$(\sim 5)_{3}$ Consider similar polygons (nonpolygons) on the sides.
$(\sim 5)_{4}$ Consider random polygons on the sides.
Attribute 6. There are three variables associated with the Pythagorean theorem. What if there were not three variables? What could be the case then? Among possibilities might be:
$(\sim 6)$ Suppose there were four variables, for example, $a^{2}+b^{2}=d^{2}+c^{2}$ or $a^{2}+b^{2}+c^{2}=d^{2}$.
$(\sim 6)_{2}$ Suppose there were two variables, for example, $a^{2}=b^{2}$.
$(\sim 6)_{3}$ Suppose there were three variables and some constants; for example,

$$
a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}+n
$$

$(\sim 6)_{4}$ Suppose there were two variables and a constant, for example,

$$
a^{2}+b^{2}=n
$$

Attribute 7. The variables are related by an "equals sign." What if this were not the case? What could the relationship be? Some possibilities are:
$(\sim 7)_{\mathrm{I}} \quad$ The variables are related by " $<$ ": $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$.
$(\sim 7)_{2} \quad$ The variables are related by " $\leq ": a^{2}+b^{2} \leq c^{2}$.
$(\sim 7)_{3} \quad$ The variables are related by division: $a^{2}+b^{2}$ divides $c^{2}$.
$(\sim 7)_{4} \quad$ The variables are related by " $>": \mathrm{a}^{2}+b^{2}>c^{2}$.
$(\sim 7)_{5} \quad a^{2}+b^{2}$ and $c^{2}$ are relatively prime.
$(\sim 7)_{6} \quad a^{2}+b^{2}$ differs from $c^{2}$ by a constant.
Attribute 8. There is plus sign between two of the variables

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\sim 8)_{1} & a^{2}-b^{2}=c^{2} \\
(\sim 8)_{2} & a^{2} \cdot b^{2}=c^{2} \\
(\sim 8)_{3} & \left(a^{2}\right)^{b^{2}}=c^{2} \\
(\sim 8)_{4} & a^{2} \div b^{2}=c^{2}
\end{array}
$$

Attribute 9. There are three exponents, all of which are the same. Some "What-If-Nots":

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\sim 9)_{1} & a+b^{2}=c^{2} \\
(\sim 9)_{2} & a+b=c^{2} \\
(\sim 9)_{3} & a^{2}+b^{3}=c^{5} \\
(\sim 9)_{4} & a^{2}+b^{2}=c
\end{array}
$$

Attribute 10. The exponents are positive integers. Some "What-If-Nots":

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\sim 10)_{1} & a^{1 / 2}+b^{1 / 2}=c^{1 / 2} \\
(\sim 10)_{2} & a^{-1}+b^{-1}=c^{-1} \\
(\sim 10)_{3} & a^{\sqrt{2}}+b^{\sqrt{2}}=c^{\sqrt{2}}
\end{array}
$$

Now we have taken 10 attributes of the Pythagorean theorem and have generated two or more alternatives for each. For attribute 7 we generated 6 alternatives, and altogether we have generated over 30 alternatives. What do we do with this list of "What-If-Not" alternatives? We progress to our Level III
activity, that of asking a question. Let us demonstrate this third level by looking at attribute 7 as a start.

## Brainstorming on One Changed Attribute

## Asking a Question

As we have shown, there are many possible variations of attribute 7 . Let us choose one of them to demonstrate how alternatives to attributes can give rise to new investigations.

Consider $(\sim 7)_{1}$ : The variables are related by a " $<$ " sign: $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$. What questions come to mind? Several possibilities are:
$(\sim 7)_{1} \quad$ (a): Does $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ have any geometrical significance?
$(\sim 7)_{1} \quad$ (b): For what numbers is the inequality $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ true?
$(\sim 7)$, (c): How many instances are there for which $a^{2}+b^{2}$ differs from $c^{2}$ by a particular constant? (i.e., $a^{2}+b^{2}=k+c^{2}$ for a fixed $k$ ).
$(\sim 7)_{1} \quad$ (d): What is the graph of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ ?
Let us stress again that we have done more than merely list attributes (Level I of our scheme) and modifying attributes by asking "What-If-Not"? (Level II). We have just posed some new questions (Level III). We would probably not have thought of these questions without having gone through Level I and Level II. For the purpose of brainstorming ideas, proposing "What-If-Not" is only Level II and must be followed by question-asking.

In Figure 13, for example, we have shown two attributes, attributes 7 and 9. Attribute 7 is, "The variables are related by an equals sign $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2 "}$ and three alternatives to this attribute are given. They are:
$(\sim 7)_{1}$ The variables are related by " $<": a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{3}$.
$(\sim 7)_{2}$ The variables are related by " $\leq ": a^{2}+b^{2} \leq c^{2}$.
$(\sim 7)_{3} \quad$ The variables are related by divisibility, $a^{2}+b^{2}$ divides $c^{2}$.
Attribute 9 is, "There are three exponents-all of them the same." One alternative to attribute 9 is shown in the diagram (namely, that there are three exponents of which the third is raised only to the first power). But in both cases-attribute 7 and attribute 9 -there is greater potential for gaining anything new once we ask a question. We urge you to trace through other branches of the diagram, making your own choices of attributes and "What-If-Not" alternatives and questions.

Posing new questions is a valuable activity. Let us demonstrate this by indicating how a newly posed question may help us gain some deeper insight into the nature of the Pythagorean relationship, which was our starting point.

## Analyzing a Question

Let us take two of the questions we posed and see how analyzing and trying to answer them gives us a deeper insight into the Pythagorean theorem. So often people have a feeling that once they "know" a theorem, they know all there is to it. So let us look at two of the questions we posed after we wrote down a "What-If-Not" to attribute 7, namely, $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$. The first question posed was, "Does $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ have any geometric significance?"

The second question posed was, "For what whole numbers does this inequality hold?" You may wish to skim much of what follows in this section and defer a reading of the details of the analysis for a second go-round. Your first step might be to translate the algebraic inequality into the geometrical assertion: The sum of the squares on the two legs of a right triangle is less than the square on the hypotenuse. Though we know from the Pythagorean theorem that this is not the case for a right triangle with right angle at C , under what circumstances might it be true?

Suppose we relax the criterion that the triangle be a right triangle but maintain our focus, using conventional notations that c is the side opposite angle C . Under what conditions can $a^{2}+b^{2}$ be less than $c^{2}$ and what is the geometric significance?

The law of cosines asserts that for any three sides $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ and c of a triangle, $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}+2 a b \cos C$. Therefore $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ whenever $2 a b \cos C$ is negative. This occurs only when $\varangle C$ is obtuse, as in the picture below.


Since the question ("Under what conditions is $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ ?") is understandable to one who knows nothing about trigonometry, it is interesting to note that the problem is also analyzable without the law of cosines. If $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$, then $c$ must be larger than what it would be if $\varangle C$ were a right angle. Hence $\varangle C$ must be obtuse. We might also ask if we could somehow appreciate the geometric significance of $c^{2}-\left(a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$, the amount by which $a^{2}+b^{2}$ falls short of $c^{2}$.

Let us recall the drawing used by Euclid in his proof of the Pythagorean theorem. See Figure 14. He proved the theorem by showing that the square on $\overline{\mathrm{BC}}$


FIG. 13.
has the same area as rectangle BKME [Figure 14(a)] and that the square on $\overline{\mathrm{CA}}$ has the same area as the rectangle KADM [Figure 14(b)]. Thus the square on $\overline{\mathrm{BC}}$ plus the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AC}}$ equals the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AB}}$.


FIG. 14.

Now let us look at what happens when $\varangle C$ is not a right angle. Since $\overline{A B}$ is shorter (longer) if $\varangle C$ is acute (obtuse), the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AB}}$ cannot now be equal to the square on $\overline{\mathrm{BC}}$ plus the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AC}}$. The difference between the area of the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AB}}$ and the sum of the squares on the other two sides of the triangle is called the defect. If $\varangle C$ is obtuse, then the area of the square on $A B$ is larger than the sum of the other two areas, whereas if $\varangle C$ is acute the area of the square on $\overline{\mathrm{AB}}$ is smaller. See Figure 15. Let us take the case in which $\left\langle C\right.$ measures more than $90^{\circ}$ (angle $\varangle C>90^{\circ}$ ) and look for a geometric way of "seeing" the defect or, the amount by which the area denoted by $c^{2}$ overshoots the area denoted by $a^{2}+b^{2}$-that, is $c^{2}-\left(a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$.

## Mimicking the Right Triangle Case

One way of attempting to find a way to "see" the defect is to try to mimic Euclid's proof for the case in which $\varangle C$ is a right angle. Since Euclid's proof is only one of well over 300 different proofs of the Pythagorean theorem, ${ }^{8}$ let us briefly recall some details of his proof. As suggested earlier, Euclid proves geometrically (i.e., makes no

[^23]
$\varangle c<90^{\circ}$
$c^{2}<a^{2}+b^{2}$


FIG. 15.
use of algebraic formulas for area) that the square on the side opposite the right angle is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides. He does this by breaking square BADE into rectangles as shown in Figure 14(a).. To prove that the rectangle BKME and square BFGC are equal in area he makes use of the fact that:
$\Delta \mathrm{BEC} \cong \triangle \mathrm{BAF}$ and hence the
area of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}=$ area of $\triangle \mathrm{BAF}$. Now the
area of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}=1 / 2 \mathrm{BE} \cdot \mathrm{BK}$, because the length of the
altitude of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}$ from C is equal to BK , and the
area of $\triangle \mathrm{BAF}=1 / 2 \mathrm{BF} \cdot \mathrm{CB}$ since the length of
the altitude of $\triangle \mathrm{BAF}$ is equal to CB .

It follows that $\mathrm{BE} \cdot \mathrm{BK}=\mathrm{BF} \cdot \mathrm{CB}$ and hence that the area of rectangle BKME equals the area of square FBCG. Similarly, Euclid showed that the area of rectangle MDAK equals the area of square AJHC [Figure 14(b)]. ${ }^{10}$

## The Obtuse Angle Case

Let us now see what happens when $\varangle \mathrm{C}$ is obtuse (Figure 16). As in the right triangle case, $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}$ is congruent to $\triangle \mathrm{BAF}$ and hence their areas are equal. Similarly the area of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}$ is $1 / 2 \mathrm{BE} \cdot \mathrm{BK}$, because the altitude of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}$ is BK .

When we look at $\triangle B F A$, and consider the base to be $\overline{\mathrm{BF}}$, the altitude is no longer $\overline{\mathrm{CB}}$ since $\varangle \mathrm{C}$ is not a right angle and $\overline{\mathrm{ACG}}$ is no longer a line segment, and of course therefore neither parallel to $\overline{\mathrm{BF}}$ nor perpendicular to $\overline{\mathrm{BC}}$. To mimic Euclid's proof we are tempted to draw $\overline{\mathrm{AC}^{\prime} \mathrm{G}^{\prime}}$ perpendicular to $\overline{\mathrm{BC}}$ produced as indicated in Figure $17(\mathrm{a})$. Then the area of $\triangle \mathrm{BFA}=1 / 2 \cdot \mathrm{BF} \cdot \mathrm{C}^{\prime} \mathrm{B}=1 / 2$ area $\mathrm{BFG}^{\prime} \mathrm{C}^{\prime}$.

Using the fact that the area of $\triangle \mathrm{BEC}$ equals the area of $\triangle \mathrm{BAF}$, we conclude that the area of rectangle $B E M K$ equals the area of rectangle $\mathrm{BFG}^{\prime} \mathrm{C}^{\prime}$ (rather than square BFGC ). So the defect contributed by BEMK is seen to be the shaded area $\mathrm{GCC}^{\prime} \mathrm{G}^{\prime}$. See Figure 17(a). Similarly MDAK contributes $\mathrm{CC}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{H}^{\prime} \mathrm{H}$, see Figure 17(b). Hence the total defect $c^{2}-\left(a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$ is seen to be the sum of the two rectangles $\mathrm{GCC}^{\prime} \mathrm{G}^{\prime}$ and

[^24]

FIG. 16.


FIG. 17.
$\mathrm{CC}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{H}^{\prime} \mathrm{H}$. Note that this defect approaches 0 as $\varangle \mathrm{C}$ approaches a right angle. So the Pythagorean theorem is a special case when the defect is zero. Another way of looking at it is to imagine line ACG approaching $\overline{\mathrm{AC}^{\prime} \mathrm{G}^{\prime}}$ and line BCH approaching $\overline{\mathrm{BC}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{H}^{\prime}}$ as $\varangle \mathrm{C}$ approaches a right angle.

## A Step Back

Lest we lose sight of the forest for the trees, let us highlight both what we have found out so far with respect to the usefulness of problem posing and how we found it out. Notice that the "What-If-Not" activity we have just been engaged in enables us to get a deeper insight into the Pythagorean theorem itself. ${ }^{11}$ Thus, as we explore alternatives to right angles, we can appreciate that certain points are collinear in the case of a right triangle or that certain "convenient lines" form altitudes (something we took for granted before considering alternatives). Furthermore, notice that these variations on a right angle enable us to appreciate in purely geometric terms a concept that would normally require a trigonometric explanation. ${ }^{12}$ Something special has taken place here with regard to our approach for the significance of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$. We would like to make the nature of our analysis explicit. Notice that in attempting to locate the geometric significance of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$, we have, as far as possible, mimicked the proof of the Pythagorean theorem for which $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}$. The concept of analyzing the variation of a phenomenon (in this case a proof) by mimicking the original phenomenon is one that sometimes pays off in our understanding the original situation. It is a concept worth keeping in mind.

## A Numerical Analysis

Next let us consider a second question in relation to "What if $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ ?" Consider ( $\sim 7)_{1}$ (b). For what whole numbers is the inequality $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ true? There are several ways to explore the problem. We might start by listing easy solutions. There are several: $(1,1,3) ;(1,1,4) ;(1,1,5) ;(1,1,6) ;(1,1,7)$. Without much difficulty we can see that $(1,1, n)$ will satisfy the inequality for any n a natural

[^25]number greater than 1 . Therefore this gives an infinite number of solutions (we have, of course, still excluded an infinite number of possibilities).

The answer that there is an infinite number of solutions, based upon the observation that the inequality holds for all triples of the form $(1,1, n)$ for $n>1$, is as unsatisfying as the observation that there is an infinite number of Pythagorean triples, based on the observation that the equality $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}$ holds for all triplets of the form ( $3 n, 4 n, 5 n$ ) for any $n$. Just as the problem of finding the number of Pythagorean triples is made more interesting by defining primitive Pythagorean triples (where $a, b$, and $c$ are relatively prime), so it is worthwhile to define a solution here in such a way that $(1,1, n)$ for all $n>1$ represents only one rather than an infinite number of solutions. Given this refinement of the concept of solution, what would another solution be?

We leave $(\sim 7)_{1}$ (c), (d) for you to explore on your own. Notice that in $(\sim 7)_{1}$ (a) and (b), we have solved the problem of what the geometric significance of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ is, and we have indicated how to begin to solve the problem of what whole numbers satisfy $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$. That is, we have become involved in problem solving and problem analyzing. We call this Level IV of our scheme. We have, however, not yet quite finished with our technique of posing problems, so we turn to another feature next.

## A New Addition to the "What-If-Not" Strategy: Cycling

So far we have been systematic in listing attributes and then asking "What-If-Not?" for each. Sometimes this has made us aware of new attributes, which we have then added to our list. But we have also thought of new "What-If-Nots" that were not obtainable by strictly applying methods discussed so far. In this section we indicate how a somewhat "sloppier" "What-If-Not" procedure may extend the process fruitfully. In a sense, we are going to loop through some branches of our scheme depicted in Figure 13. We need alternatives to two or more attributes to do so.

Among the many "What-If-Not" alternatives we can derive by modifying the attributes of equality (attribute 7) and equal exponents (attribute 9) for the Pythagorean theorem are the following respectively:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
(\sim 7)_{1}: & a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2} \\
(\sim 9)_{4}: & a^{2}+b^{2}=c .
\end{array}
$$

Let us use these two alternatives to illustrate what else we can do to add other possibilities we cannot get by our previous methods. Notice that ( $\sim 7)_{1}$ deals with inequality but keeps the right-hand term fixed, while $(\sim 9)_{4}$ keeps equality fixed but deals with an exponent of 1 .

A new form would be:

$$
a^{2}+b^{2}<c
$$

A simple, systematic application of the "What-If-Not" principle on any of the listed attributes would not yield the sentence $a^{2}+b^{2}<c$. There are at least two possible paths indicated in the left-hand and right-hand branches of Figure 18. We could first (see the left-hand branch) apply the "What-If-Not" principle to attribute 7 (equality) and then reapply the same principle to attribute 9 (three equal exponents). Or we could reverse the order and start with the right-hand branch.

The process of varying one attribute followed by varying another suggests a systematic technique we could employ for brainstorming new problems. We call this technique cycling. Here we have a systematic way of generating new forms by combining the preceding two "What-If-Nots." Without much effort, we begin to generate an enormous number of new combinations of changed attributes by cycling through various branches of the chart (Figure 13) with the "What-If-Not" principle. We can demonstrate what is involved here by placing the left-hand branch of Figure 18 in the context of the overall plan. The darkened horizontal arrow in Figure 19 indicates that we have imposed $(\sim 7)_{1}$ onto $(\sim 9)_{4}$. There is, of course, nothing special about this particular imposition, and in order to significantly increase new forms we could cycle an attribute such as $(\sim 7)_{1}$ throughout the chart.

Now that we have a new form, $a^{2}+b^{2}<c$, where can we go from here? Remember that the next step is to ask a question. What question could we ask?


FIG. 18.


FIG. 19.

Instead of choosing new questions, we can select some of the questions asked in our previous variations. In $(\sim 7)_{1}$ (a)-(d) among the questions (generalized a little) we asked the following:

How many triples are there?
For what numbers will the statement be true?
Let us choose the first of these questions and apply it to the new form. We then have the following new problem: For any fixed value of $c$ ( $c$ a natural number), how many ordered pairs ( $a, b$ ) of integers satisfy the inequality $a^{2}+b^{2}<c$ ?

We might begin the problem most naturally by creating a table (see Table 3).
We urge you to complete the second row of the table to verify the entries in the third row.

We can make a number of observations (based on the table).

1. The number of ordered pairs in each case in our list so far is odd.
2. From $c$ to $c+1$, the number of ordered pairs increases by either 4 or 8 , or remains constant.
3. There are not more than three $c$ 's in succession that have the same number of ordered pairs for solution.

Undoubtedly, you will make a number of other observations. So far, however, we have calculated a value of $N$ for each value of $c$. What happens if we explore the original (more general) question. "For any $c$, what is the value of $N$ ?" Here we begin to look for an explicit relationship between the entries in the first and third row. There are many ways of exploring the relation of $N$ to $c$. Consider differences, sums, ratios. The latter will lead to a result that will surprise you. (The use of graph paper may help reveal why a specific ratio is approached. This may lead to some fascinating "pi-in-the-sky" thinking).

## Reflections on Cycling

New forms can be obtained by cycling alternatives through the different attributes as we did to obtain $a^{2}+b^{2}<c$. Even with only a small number of attributes and a small number of alternatives, the number of new ideas that can be obtained is staggering. Furthermore, not only the alternative forms, but the questions themselves can be cycled, as we did in the preceding example. This cycling technique can be very powerful.

We illustrate this with an example from our own experience. In the previous section, we posed the problem:

What is the graph of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2} ?\left[(\sim 7)_{1}(\mathrm{~d})\right]$
In analyzing the question, we had to clarify whether we are holding some of the variables fixed or not-that is, the graph could be one-, two-, or three-dimensional.

TABLE 3
Number of Ordered Pairs of Integers as a Function of Integral Values of $\mathbf{c}$ in $a^{2}+b^{2}<c$

| c | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) $: a^{2}+b^{2}<c$ | $(0,0)$ | $\begin{gathered} (0,0),( \pm 1,0) \\ (0, \pm 1) \end{gathered}$ | ? | ? | ? | ? | . | - | . | - | . | . | . | . | . | . | . | . | ? |
| $N=$ number of ordered pairs | 1 | 5 | 9 | 9 | 13 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 25 | 29 | 37 | 37 | 37 | 45 | 45 | 45 | 49 | 57 | 61 |

We leave it to you to analyze this problem. Let us point out, however, that the analogous question for the case of equality (what is the graph of $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}$ ?) was one that had not occurred to us at the time we originally began brainstorming on questions directly related to the Pythagorean theorem. The question "What is the graph of ..." can also be cycled through our other forms. In this way the problem-posing strategy not only enables us to pose problems with regard to changes on what is given, but gives us a better understanding of the unmodified phenomenon as well.

Notice too, that once we observe that graphing is a phenomenon about which we have asked a new question, we can turn the question itself into an attribute. Only after we asked the question about graphing of $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$ did we realize it could be applied as a question in the case of the Pythagorean relationship. As importantly, however, we realized that graphing can itself become an attribute of the Pythagorean relationship. Thus, we might add as an attribute:

$$
a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2} \text { is a relationship that lends itself to graphing. }
$$

You may at this point wish to add a number of questions to our "handy list of questions" from chapter 3 . An obvious one suggested by the above exploration would be: What is the graph of ...?

## SUMMARY

So far we have presented an outline of a problem posing strategy that we call "What-If-Not." As we have shown, there are a number of different components (Figures 12 and 13). We illustrated the strategy by using two types of starting points-a concrete material and a theorem. Since we cannot begin without choosing a starting point, perhaps we should dignify this step by calling it Level 0 of our strategy. Our next step (Level I) was to list some attributes. We then asked, "What if each attribute were not so; what could it be then?" (Level II). We then used these new alternatives as a basis for asking new questions (Level III). Then we selected some of our new questions and tried to analyze or answer them. This is Level IV of our scheme. The stages of our strategy can be summarized by a few key words.

The major stages of our strategy are:
Level 0 Choosing a Starting Point
Level I Listing Attributes
Level II What-If-Not-ing
Level III Question Asking or Problem Posing
Level IV Analyzing the Problem

In addition, we have shown how the strategy of cycling modified attributes and cycling questions can be incorporated into the system-resulting in a number of questions that might stagger the imagination of even the most creative thinker.

Our scheme, however, is not as linear as it may seem from this list. Almost every part can (and does) affect others. A new question may trigger a new attribute, and a new attribute may in turn trigger a new question (for example). This in turn may enable you to see the original phenomenon in a new light.

Furthermore, it is worth keeping in mind that not all questions need be clear and easily understandable when they are first posed. We have even suggested that there might be value in posing problems that are ambiguous. Ambiguity has more value than we usually acknowledge. For one thing, it can lead to assuming a more humorous lighthearted attitude toward exploration. In addition, what is ambiguous in one context may generate other contexts within which it has greater clarity. In discussing questions to ask about the orchard in the section on the infinite geoboard for example, we wondered how things might change if the man looking out on his orchard were to relinquish his diet pills. Given the context of the orchard-with a concern on what is in the man's line of vision-this question might appear misguided. That is so if we were to continue to ask questions about the man's line of vision-as if it were a straight line with no width. Can you imagine what new questions you might ask and even what new attributes you might notice if we allowed for the possibility that his line of vision has some thickness to it?

The WIN ["What-If-Not"] scheme may seem very formal the first time you read about or try the approach we have described and illustrated. You may also be overwhelmed by the number of possibilities and new problems that emerge. But when you choose your own starting point and carry out the steps outlined in this chapter, you will soon internalize the strategy implied by the different levels and you will find yourself doing a "What-If-Not" procedure in a more nonchalant manner. After a while, you will do it in a more haphazard and less systematic way, as is the case with many people who do research in mathematics. In fact, we strongly hope that you will not adopt this procedure in a mechanical way. Rather, we hope that it will provide a touchstone for a spirit of investigation and free inquiry, in a most imaginative way. We hope that this spirit will not be bound by the narrow "tunnel vision" so frequently associated with school based mathematical activity. With this in mind, we turn to a more lighthearted approach with a variety of starting points in the next chapter. Before doing so, however, you might wish to look once more at the last paragraph of the subsection "Reflections on Cycling." If you are wondering how it is that people may have come up with some of the questions to ask (Level III), it might pay to skim the headings of chapter 3 in the section "Strategies for Phase-One Problem Generation." You mostly likely will be in a position now to add to those categories.

## 5

## The "What-If-Not" Strategy in Action

In the last chapter we used two examples to develop and describe our "What-If-Not" scheme for problem posing. Now let us employ the scheme, using several different topics or situations. Unlike our approach in the previous chapter, we are less exhaustive here. Instead, in order to indicate the richness of the scheme, we focus on just a few "What-If-Not" paths based on a listing of some of the attributes.

Although we have introduced the use of computer technology programs explicitly in the last two examples of the later section entitled "Other Beginnings...", we could have done so with many other examples in this chapter. We encourage the reader who has access to such programs to do so with some of the other examples.

## TWO SAMPLE "WHAT-IF-NOTS" IN SOME DETAIL

## Example 1. A Sequence: Fibonacci Sequence

## Brief Background

Before actually doing a "What-If-Not," we want to present some background on this fascinating topic, one that not only unites different branches of
mathematics but also relates mathematics to architecture, art, and even aesthetics. In this section we shall summarize well-known results, and will indicate sources for further investigation. In the following section, we assume a more playful attitude as we apply the "What-If-Not" strategy to the content of the Fibonacci sequence.

Look at the following sequence of numbers:

$$
1,1,2,3,5,8,13,21,34,55,89, \ldots
$$

It is generated by a very simple rule, "Starting with 1 and 1 as the first two terms, add any two adjacent terms, and the sum will yield the next one." Thus:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1+1=2 \\
& 1+2=3 \\
& 2+3=5 \\
& 3+5=8
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $55+89=144$, the next term in the sequence is 144 . Generate a few more terms in the infinite sequence.

This sequence was investigated originally by Fibonacci (literally, "the son of Bonacci") an Italian mathematician of the 13 th century. Despite its simplicity, it is one of the most intriguing mathematical sequences because it connects a number of branches of mathematics and, in addition, abounds with applications to numerous other disciplines.

All of the following phenomena are related in some way to the original sequence:

- The ratio of the length to the width of the Parthenon in Greece.
- The placement of the navel in Michelangelo's David.
- The construction of a regular pentagon using only an unmarked straight-edge and a pair of compasses.
- The number of leaves in a pine cone.
- The reproduction of rabbits (appropriately conceived).
- The investigation of aesthetically appealing rectangles.

One clue that may unlock several of these diverse fields for you may be revealed by observing the ratio of adjacent terms (choose smaller to larger numbers to get ratios). Thus we have:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 / 1 & \doteq 1.000 \\
1 / 2 & \doteq 500 \\
2 / 3 & \doteq 667 \\
3 / 5 & \doteq 600 \\
5 / 8 & \doteq 625 \\
8 / 13 & \doteq .615 \\
13 / 21 & \doteq .619 \\
21 / 34 & \doteq .618 \\
34 / 55 & \doteq .618
\end{aligned}
$$

The sequence of ratios approaches

$$
\frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2}
$$

as a limit (which is irrational and is equal to .618 to three decimal places). That number is called the "golden ratio." It turns out that the ratio of width to length of the Parthenon approximates the "golden ratio," and also that David's "belly button" is placed at approximately .618 of his total height. Why the ratio of succeeding terms of the Fibonacci sequence approaches the golden ratio and how these other "real-world" phenomena relate to the golden ratio is revealed in numerous books and journals. ${ }^{2}$ Although not essential for what follows, one way of arriving at the golden ratio is to begin with the definition of the $n^{\text {th }}$ term in terms of the two preceding ones. Thus $t_{n}=t_{n-1}+t_{n-2}$. If you divide both sides of this equation by $t_{n-1}$ and consider ratios of terms as $n$ gets large, you are on the right track. ${ }^{3}$ In summarizing, we begin (for the record) with (a), the "find" we have already discussed:
${ }^{\text {I }}$ If you take a segment of length 1 and break it up into segments of length $x$ and $1-x$, so that

$$
\frac{x}{1}=\frac{1-x}{x}
$$

when you solve for $x$, you get the aforementioned irrational number, and each of these 2 fractions will be the golden ratio. A rectangle with such dimensions is called a golden rectangle.
${ }^{2}$ For a start, see Martin Gardner, "The Multiple Fascination of the Fibonacci Sequence," Scientific American, March 1969, pp. 116-20; Stephen I. Brown, "From the Golden Rectangle and Fibonacci to Pedagogy and Problem Posing," Mathematics Teacher, March 1976, pp. 180-188. You will find a bibliography leading to other sources in these articles. In addition, there is a research journal, The Fibonacci Quarterly, which specializes in "fall-out" of the Fibonacci sequence.
${ }^{3}$ The uncommon development of the quadratic equation, which ends chapter 6 , provides another clue as to how we can arrive at the ratio.
(a) The ratio of succeeding terms approaches

$$
\frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2} \doteq .618
$$

the "golden ration."
(b) The difference between any two adjacent terms generates another Fibonacci sequence (with 0 instead of 1 as the first term).
Thus: $1,1,2,3,5,8,13,21$ becomes $0,1,1,2,3,5,8$.
(c) The square of any term differs by one from the product of its two adjacent terms:


Thus: $5^{2}=3 \cdot 8+1$
Also: $13^{2}=8 \cdot 21+1$
(d) The product of two adjacent terms differs by one from the product of the two terms preceding and following these terms:


$$
\text { Thus: } 3 \cdot 5=2 \cdot 8-1
$$

Also: $8 \cdot 13=5 \cdot 21-1$

But notice that $5 \cdot 8=3 \cdot 13+1$ and also $2 \cdot 3=1 \cdot 5+1$
If you have not explored the Fibonacci sequence before, you may wish to investigate (a)-(d) further before moving into a "What-If-Not" mode. If so, take a few minutes out before we begin to list the attributes (Level I) of the Fibonacci sequence.

## Beginning a "What-If-Not" on Fibonacci

What are some attributes? Recall that we generate any term after the first two by adding two adjacent terms. This definition seems so simple that we might neglect to see its essential features. As we have said earlier, it may very well be that it is only after you have done some modification at other levels of the "What-If-Not" process
that you will become aware of the essential features of the phenomenon you are investigating. The following are two features (in addition to the one just mentioned) that we see as essential to the definition of the sequence:

1. We start with two given numbers.
2. The two starting numbers are both 1 .

## Breaking Up Attributes

Of course there are more attributes to list for the Fibonacci sequence, but first it is worth observing that we have expanded what might have been one statement into two; that is, we could have said:
3. The first two given numbers are 1 and 1 .

Do you see the advantage of breaking up the attribute listing as in statements 1 and 2 rather than consolidating it as in 3? By doing so, we have signaled the possibility that at a later stage we might change not just one thing, but two-the number of "starting numbers" and the value of the starting numbers. If we had selected statement 3 as a way of listing the attribute, we might very well see only the possibility of changing the value of the beginning numbers without realizing that we might also change the number of beginning numbers (e.g., from two to perhaps three or four).

With this word of caution, we realize that it might have even been better to break up statement 2 into two parts as indicated here:

- The first two numbers are the same.
- The same number is 1 .

After having fumbled around as already described, we realized that a good way to get started would be to list the attributes as follows:
(i) We start with two given numbers.
(ii) These two starting numbers are the same.
(iii) The same number is 1 .

## More Listing

Let us now move on to other attribute listing, this time without reflecting explicitly on our wording as we did for the previous listing.
(iv) If we do something to any two successive numbers, we get the next number.
(v) The something we do is an operation.
(vi) The operation is addition.

Perhaps you will find ways of breaking up attributes in a more fine-grained way than we have, so that you will be able to come up with even more interesting challenges at the next stage.

## What-If-Not

Having demonstrated some attribute listing (Level I), let us now move to Level II: "What-If-Not." Let us select (ii) as the attribute to challenge. ${ }^{4}$ If the first two terms were not the same, what might they be? Suppose we maintain integers and even maintain the generating characteristic of the Fibonacci sequence, but select 10 and 7 as the first two terms? ${ }^{5}$

Thus, ( (ii) might be, "Suppose 10, 7 are the first two terms." We thus have the following sequence:

$$
10,7,17,24,41,65,106,171, \ldots
$$

Now that we have modified the sequence, what might we do? Of the many questions we might ask (Level III), let us consider several that derive from our knowledge of the original sequence-described in (a), (b), etc. under "Brief Background".

## Asking Questions

(a') What limit (if any) does the ratio of succeeding terms approach?

Moving to Level IV, we begin to analyze the problem. If we take ratios of succeeding terms, we get the following: $10 / 7=1.429,7 / 17=.412,17 / 24=.708$. What limit do you think is being approached? Try a few more ratios. Move far out on the sequence. The fact that $106 / 171=.620$ suggests that it is reasonable to conjecture that we are once more approaching $.618 \ldots$, the golden ratio! Is it so and if so, why? An

[^26]analysis of why the original Fibonacci ratios approach this limit might reveal why the situation has not changed in the new sequence. It is even possible that we would understand the original limit in a new light if we were to see why it is not affected by a radical change in the first two terms. Since our object here, however, is to exhibit the "What-If-Not" scheme in action, rather than to provide a full-blown analysis of relevant mathematics at each point, we leave that investigation up to you. The Fibonacci references at the beginning of this chapter will provide some direction should you be interested in pursuing this issue.

We move now to yet another question to investigate on our modified sequence. We look back at (b) discussed earlier with regard to the bona fide sequence, then a counterpart to (b) would be:
(b') What sequence is generated by taking the difference of succeeding terms?


It seems clear that after a slightly rocky beginning, we once more "retrieve" the original sequence. You will probably find the analysis of why that is so to be easier than the analysis in ( $\mathrm{a}^{\prime}$ ). At any rate, the fact that we do arrive at a new sequence (by taking succeeding differences) that is almost identical to the original except for the first term, suggests that we might now investigate a totally new question that had not occurred to us earlier: "How can we "work backwards" given any Fibonacci-like sequence in order to discover what terms precede the first one?"

## Analyzing Questions

Let us now investigate how the phenomenon described in (c) for the Fibonacci sequence fares in our new Fibonacci-like sequence. We ask the question:
(c') How does the square of any term compare with the product of its neighbors (again "borrowed" from an attribute of the original setup)?


Compare $7^{2}(49)$ with the product of its neighbors: $17 \times 10=170$. It is no longer the case that $7^{2}$ differs from $10 \times 17$ by 1 .

Too bad! Let us move to another question:
(d') How does the product of two adjacent terms compare with the product of the two terms preceding and following?

$7 \times 17$ does not differ from $10 \times 24$ by 1 as in the analogous Fibonacci sequence. Too bad once again! But wait! Look at the "miss" in both ( $c^{\prime}$ ) and ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}$ ):

From ( $c^{\prime}$ ): $7^{2}=10 \cdot 17-121$.
From (d'): $17 \cdot 7=10 \cdot 24-121$.

There is something promising here! Just as 1 was the magic number for the Fibonacci sequence, so 121 might work here. Let's try a few more cases:
$17^{2}=289$, and $24 \cdot 7=168$, again a difference $(289-168)$ of 121 .
$24 \cdot 17=408$ and $41 \cdot 7=287$, again a difference of 121 .

It looks as if we may have come upon something fascinating. Some further questions are suggested:

- Why is 121 significant here?
- How does 121 relate to our choice of 10 and 7 as our first two numbers?
- Would this "magic" hold for a different choice of the first two numbers?
- Of course, as in the case of examining ratios for the two sequences, we could be led back to the Fibonacci sequence itself and ask, "Why is 1 so significant as a correction factor there (just as 121 is significant for the pseudo-Fibonacci sequence)?"
- What properties (like the role of 1 and 121 ) are shared by the two sequences?
- Just as there was a golden rectangle associated with the Fibonacci sequence, is there a geometric figure suggested by the Fibonacci-like sequence?
- What other questions might you add?

As we suggested in chapter 4, the "What-If-Not" in this new context raises questions that enable us to see aspects of the original context that we did not notice at first.

We could go on and on. Notice that we have made only one variation of an attribute (attribute ii) of the Fibonacci sequence. We modified the first two numbers. What else might we vary to pose new problems? The following are some further possible directions to investigate based on "What-If-Nots." For these questions, which attributes (of the six we have listed) are we negating? Do any of
these "What-If-Nots" suggest attributes that we may have neglected to list-or perhaps ones that we might break up as we did when we listed the first three? Can you figure out on which attributes we have performed a "What-If-Not" in coming up with the following?

- What would the consequences be of adding three successive numbers to get the next term?
- What would the consequences be of adding every other number?
- Suppose we modify the operation from addition to something else? Then ... (the question to be posed is left for you).

This is just the beginning. You can continue to make additional variations and to pose new questions based on these variations.

## Example 2. A Problem: Rectangles

You may think that the previous example gave rise to rich ideas only because it was special or particularly interesting. Let us see next how our ideas can reap rewards even when we start with a very basic problem-one that may even look extremely dull, an example of a very standard type of exercise:

Calculate the area of a rectangle given that the width is 2 meters and the length is 3 meters.

Even a touch of the "What-If-Not" technique can enrich this simple exercise. Let us begin by considering the problem just stated and listing a few of its attributes (Level I activity). What does your list of attributes look like? Our list, which may look quite different from yours, follows:

1. The situation is an exercise.
2. The exercise is a request to calculate.
3. The exercise deals with a four-sided shape.
4. The exercise deals with a rectangle.
5. We are asked to calculate an area.
6. The width and length are specified.
7. We are given two numbers.
8. We are asked to calculate one number.

Notice, once more, the list does not consist of attributes that are independent of each other. Nor do we rule out obvious or perhaps meaningless attributes because some of them may lead to worthwhile explorations or because they may suggest additional attributes. For example, you might think that attribute 8 is silly, but it
focuses our attention on the fact that we are probably going to give the answer as 6 square meters and not as $2 \times 3$ square meters-although it surely is worthwhile to examine the answer in factored form for some purposes.

Let us now proceed to Level II and ask "What-If-Not?" for the attributes. ${ }^{6}$ Here we choose only one attribute to illustrate our strategy: attribute 6 on our list:
6. The width and length are specified.
"What-If-Not" attribute 6 [denoted by ( $\sim 6)$ ]? What alternatives occur to you? Here are some we or our students have thought of:
$(\sim 6)_{1}$ Only the width is specified.
$(\sim 6)_{2}$ Only the length is specified.
$(\sim 6)_{3}$ The sum of the width and length is specified.
$(\sim 6)_{4}$ The length and width can be chosen from two given numbers.
$(\sim 6)_{5}$ The lengths of the two diagonals are given.
$(\sim 6)_{6}$ The distances from the center to the four corners are given.
$(\sim 6)_{7} \quad$ The distances from the center to three corners are given.
$(\sim 6)_{8}$ The distances from the center to two corners are given.
$(\sim 6)_{9} \quad$ The distances from any point in the rectangle to three corners are given.
$(\sim 6)_{10}$ The area is given.
Here, again, we have neither made the alternatives independent of each other nor have we ruled them out just because they seem to give insufficient or redundant information.

Let us look at one of the alternatives suggested by $(\sim 6)_{4}$.
$(\sim 6)_{4}$ : The length and width can be chosen from two given numbers.
What questions might we ask now? (Such question-asking is our Level III activity.) The original question asked us to find the area. Here we are first faced with the question, "What are the possible rectangles?" and a new one, "How many possible rectangles are there?" This makes us more fully aware that we had only one possible rectangle before-a 2 meter by 3 meter one, because the width was specified as 2 m and the length as 3 m . Even if we now agree to consider a $3 \times 2$ rectangle to be the same as $2 \times 3$ one, we still have a more complicated problem than the original one. See Figure 20.

By stating that the length and width are to be chosen from the two lengths $2 \mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{~m}$, rather than being told that the length is 3 m and the width 2 m , how is the situation made more interesting? What possible rectangles can we have now? Notice that we can have a $2 \times 2$ or a $3 \times 3$ square as well as a $2 \times 3$ rectangle. That is, we can have three

[^27]

FIG. 20.
possible different rectangles and two of them are squares. We can find the area of each of these rectangles.

Let us continue to ask questions on the same "What-If-Not" Attribute 6, alternative $(\sim 6)_{4}$. It is tempting to stick to the same question (how many rectangles?) for a moment and answer it for three different available lengths, and even for four or only one.

Suppose we had three different lengths to choose from, say lengths of $a, b, c .^{7}$ How many different rectangles can be made now? There are several ways to get the answer. How would you do it?

One way is to first determine the number of squares as we did before. In this case there are three squares: $a \times a, b \times b, c \times c$. Then there are three different non-square rectangles, $a \times b, a \times c, b \times c$, giving six different rectangles in all. How many different rectangles are possible if we have only one or only two different starting lengths? Let us begin to make a table to collect the information (Table 4).

TABLE 4
Number of Different Rectangles As A Function of the Number of Starting Lengths

| Number of different <br> starting lengths | Number of squares | Number of nonsquare <br> rectangles | Total number <br> of rectangles |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 2 | 2 | 1 | 3 |
| 3 | 3 | 3 | 6 |
| 4 | 4 | $?$ | $?$ |
| 5 | 5 | $?$ | $?$ |

[^28]What is your guess about the number of different rectangles if we had four or five different starting lengths?

If we had four possible starting lengths, we have four possible squares. How many nonsquare rectangles are there? We can have a choice of four different lengths for one side, and then a choice of three different lengths for the second side, giving us $12(4 \cdot 3)$ choices in all. But wait a minute; we must divide this answer by two because we decided to consider an $a \times b$ rectangle to be the same as a $b \times a$ rectangle. So, we have 4 squares and 6 nonsquare rectangles, yielding ten different rectangles in all. Fill in the rest of the table; do you see some patterns emerging?

Filling in a few more rows will probably persuade you that the number of different rectangles possible for $n$ different starting lengths is $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ or some equivalent formula. ${ }^{8}$ One way to show that this is the correct result is to realize that there are $n$ possible squares and $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ different rectangles that are not squares. This gives a total of $n+\frac{n(n-1)}{2}=\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ different rectangles. ${ }^{9}$

Returning to our original question about areas, we can now calculate the area of each possible rectangle for any given value of $n$ (the number of different starting

[^29]If you have never proved the formula for $T_{n}$, you can convince yourself of its correctness by taking a staircase of squares depicting $1+2+3+4+5$, for example. Then make a duplicate of it. Can you put them together to form a rectangle? How many square are there in the rectangle? You might also look back at The Gauss solution at the beginning of Chapter 4.


[^30]lengths). Before looking at the general cases, you might want to find all possible areas for four starting lengths of $3,5,7$, and 10 , respectively. See Table 5.

TABLE 5
Areas as a Function of Starting Lengths

| Number <br> of starting <br> lengths, n | Number <br> of squares | Number <br> of nonsquare <br> rectangles | Total number <br> of rectangles | Areas |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1: (a) | 1 | 0 | 1 | $a^{2}$ |
| 2: (a,b) | 2 | 1 | 3 | $a^{2}, b^{2}, a b$ |
| 3: $(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}, \mathrm{c})$ | 3 | 3 | 6 | $a^{2}, b^{2}, c^{2}$ <br> $a b, a c, b c$, |
| 4: $(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}, \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{d})$ | 4 | 6 | 10 | $a^{2}, b^{2}, c^{2} a b$, <br> $a c, a d, b c$, <br> $b d, c d$ |
| $n:\left(\mathrm{s}_{1}, \mathrm{~s}_{2}, \ldots \mathrm{~s}_{n}\right)$ | $n$ | $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ | $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ |  |

We can now ask a new question, "For any given value of $n$ (e.g., $n=4$ ) which rectangle has the smallest area? Which has the greatest area?" It is easy to answer these questions if we assume $a<b<c<d$, because $a^{2}$ is clearly the smallest and $d^{2}$ the largest value for the area. It is also easy to see that $a^{2}<a b<b^{2}<b c<c^{2}<c d<d^{2}$, but it is not trivial to analyze where $a c, a d$, and $b d$ belong in this sequence. What conditions do you have to impose on the relative sizes of $a, b, c$, or $d$ to make a definitive statement? Of course, for any four particular lengths, you can calculate the areas and arrange the rectangles according to size. Try a few different values of $a, b, c, d$ to see if you can get the orders of the rectangles changed. Under what conditions on $a, b, c, d$ is the size of the areas of the two rectangles $a \times c$ and $b \times d$ reversed? The same? Next, you may wish to tackle the ordering according to area of the fifteen possible rectangles made from five starting lengths.

Notice that the problem "How many different rectangles are possible to make from a given number of different lengths?" is a practical one. Carpenters, for example, may meet such a problem when they need to know how many different sized frames they can produce from different available lengths. They may need to know how many different lengths they must stock to be able to make, say, 15 different sized frames for items such as waterbeds, door frames, window molding,
and picture frames. They might be quite surprised to find that to make 16 different frames, they need to stock six different lengths but that this enables them to make 21 different sized frames! Notice, we have not yet taken into consideration that some frames may be different in size and yet have the same area.

We have pursued only one small path for one changed attribute and only a tiny fraction of the alternatives to that situation. ${ }^{10} \mathrm{We}$ asked only a very few questions. Do you realize how many new paths the original question suggests? Where are you led if you pursue a "What-If-Not" on attribute 4?

Attribute 4. The exercise deals with a rectangle.
What if it did not deal with a rectangle? Suppose it dealt with a triangle, a rhombus, or a general quadrilateral? Where would old and new questions lead? It should be clear that starting with a mundane example of calculating the area of one particular rectangle, we can, by just a touch of the "What-If-Not" technique, open up the problem to investigations of various depths and degrees of difficulty.

## OTHER BEGINNINGS: SOME SNIPPETS

This section is intended to entice you with the spirit of the "What-If-Not" strategy, making use of the various levels.

## Level I. Attribute Listing

Level II. "What-If-Not-ing"
Level III. Question Asking
Level IV. Analyzing a Problem

Without specifying in much detail which specific level is being used, we present these snippets to indicate the unexpected byways we have been led to explore as a result of "What-If-Not-ing" on a variety of starting points. A major reason for presenting these snippets is to encourage you to use your own starting points.

Our experience indicates that there are significant differences among people in their ability to use the strategy implicitly. For some people, considerable practice is needed before learning to challenge the given in any situation; for others, relatively little explicit teaching is necessary. You may wish to take this observation into consideration as you approach some of the situations described here.

[^31]It has also been our experience that most people eventually do not require the overt "What-If-Not?" structure to generate new problems because the method is soon incorporated as a way of thinking. Although you will uncover interesting issues and topics that never occurred to us in our explorations of the situations that follow, we have indicated in each case something for you to read in the event that you wish to compare your explorations with someone else's. In some cases the explorations will be very open-ended; in others, we will direct you in ways that are rather specific and closed.

## Some Data ${ }^{\text {II }}$

How often have you caught yourself daydreaming over a doodle of some kind or even over some arithmetic calculation? The following is some very unexpected fall-out based on a "What-If-Not" perspective imposed on just such a situation.

Look at the following number pattern that was arrived at in a spirit of doodling:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 3=3 \\
& 2 \cdot 4=8 \\
& 3 \cdot 5=15 \\
& 4 \cdot 6=24 \\
& 5 \cdot 7=35
\end{aligned}
$$

There are many attributes to observe in the above. For example, notice that:

1. In each case there are two factors.
2. The factors in each pair differ by 2.
3. The differences between the products form an interesting pattern:

$$
\begin{aligned}
8-3 & =5 \\
15-8 & =7 \\
24-15 & =9 \\
35-24 & =11
\end{aligned}
$$

[^32]It appears that the differences form an arithmetic progression; furthermore, the products alternate in parity (odd, even, odd, even, odd). You could take these data and generate many observations, conjectures or questions in the spirit of chapter 3, in which we accept the given.

We could also do a "What-If-Not" on the data in the spirit of chapter 4. With the intention of carrying out such an exploration, let us list one more attribute that was the impetus for this investigation. First look once more at $3,8,15,24$, and $35 \ldots$ as the start of a sequence. If you think in metaphors like "striving," you will be impressed that those numbers in the sequence are all almost perfect squares. They all miss by 1 . Here is the picture:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 3=3 \rightarrow 4(\text { missing by } 1) \\
& 2 \cdot 4=8 \rightarrow 9(\text { missing by } 1) \\
& 3 \cdot 5=15 \rightarrow 16(\text { missing by } 1) \\
& 4 \cdot 6=24 \rightarrow 25(\text { missing by } 1) \\
& 5 \cdot 7=35 \rightarrow 36(\text { missing by } 1)
\end{aligned}
$$

To see where this might lead, let us focus on the attribute that asserts that the factors differ by two. Suppose they are made to differ by four. Then if we still start with 1, we have:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 5=5 \\
& 2 \cdot 6=12 \\
& 3 \cdot 7=21 \\
& 4 \cdot 8=32 \\
& 5 \cdot 9=45
\end{aligned}
$$

So what? In using the "What-If-Not" strategy we have to ask a question, something we have not done yet. Let us choose as a question something that comes out of the last attribute we observed earlier, that the pattern almost yields squares. Let us ask, "Can we get that again?"

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 5=5=(4)+1 \\
& 2 \cdot 6=12=(9)+3 \\
& 3 \cdot 7=21=(16)+5 \\
& 4 \cdot 8=32=(25)+7 \\
& 5 \cdot 9=45=(36)+9
\end{aligned}
$$

Although this pattern yields squares, the correction factors form an arithmetic progression (1, 3, 5, 7, 9). In our original metaphor of "striving," the correction factor for all numbers was the same, namely, the number 1 . Can we find something like that here? If we try for 9 rather than 4 as the "striven square" for $1 \cdot 5$, let's see what emerges.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 5=5=(9)-4=3^{2}-2^{2} \\
& 2 \cdot 6=12=(10)-4=4^{2}-2^{2} \\
& 3 \cdot 7=21=(25)-4=5^{2}-2^{2} \\
& 4 \cdot 8=? \\
& 5 \cdot 9=?
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that here we have the same correction factor -4 in every case. Furthermore, that correction factor itself is a perfect square! As we look back at the original data, we realize that there too the correction factor, 1 , is also a perfect square.

At this point, you are probably tempted to explore another variation of the product pairs. Again, let us strive for squares given the following factors. (What kind of number is the correction factor itself?

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \cdot 7=7=4^{2}-? ? ? \\
& 2 \cdot 8=16=5^{2}-? ? ?
\end{aligned}
$$

Finish up on your own!
There is a lot to explore just following this particular line of thought. Can you calculate 5-13 so that the "striven number" and the correction factor are both squares? Can you find those squares in an efficient manner?

If you think of the two numbers as sitting on the ends of a seesaw, then it is easy to figure out how to create the two squares. The following picture suggests what is happening. Nine is midway between 5 and 13 , thus "balancing" 5 and 13 . It is easy to see that the correction factor is 4 .


The implications of this search are extraordinary; they suggest, ultimately, a new algorithm for multiplying any two integers. The search was in fact begun by doing a
"What-If-Not" based on free-floating musing as a start. You might want to investigate whether this newly emerging procedure (multiplying any two numbers in terms of the difference of squares) actually becomes complicated or not. It is much more manageable than you would guess initially.

Before leaving this activity, you might also want to do at least one more "What-If-Not" on the data to see if you can find another starting path, based on your own muse. It might be worth saving your future doodles to see in what unexpected directions later "What-If-Nots" might take you.

## Starting With a Problem

Given a point $P$ in the interior of rectangle $A B C D$, such that $P A=3, P B=4, P C=5$ (Figure 21). What is PD? ${ }^{12}$ We decided to use this textbook problem as a starting point for "What-If-Not-ing" because we were surprised by the nature of the problem.

Actually, it was more discomfort than surprise that piqued our interest at the beginning, because the sides of the rectangle were not given. How is it possible to determine the length of the fourth segment $\overline{\mathrm{PD}}$ without knowing the lengths of the sides? Further analysis revealed the surprising result that despite the fact that the length of $\overline{\mathrm{PD}}$ is indeed determined ( $\mathrm{PD}=3 \sqrt{2}$ ), there are an infinite number of rectangles satisfying the given conditions. That affected our curiosity enough to suggest using the problem as a starting point for a "What-If-Not." So we looked again at Figure 21 and made a list of attributes, including:

1. The problem deals with a rectangle.
2. The problem deals with a four-sided shape.


FIG. 21.

[^33]3. The problem deals with a shape that has four equal angles.
4. The number of lengths given is one less than the number of vertices.
5. The lengths of the three segments from one point to three vertices are given.

We realized that by focusing on each part of sentence number 5 in turn (the lengths of the three segments from one point to three vertices are given) we actually had many attributes within that one! We capture that find by expanding our list to include attributes 6-12.
6. The lengths of the three segments, are given.
7. The lengths of three segments are given.
8. The lengths of three segments are given.
9. The lengths of segments starting from one point are given.
10. The lengths of segments starting from one point are given.
11. The lengths of segments terminating at three vertices are given.
12. The lengths of segments terminating at vertices are given.

Instead of listing some "What-If-Nots" on these few attributes, we have drawn pictures (Figure 22) to suggest some alternatives. For example, Figure 22(a) negates the fact that a four-sided figure is given, whereas Figure 22(b) negates the fact that the number of lengths given is 1 less than the number of vertices. Which attributes are negated by other figures?

Now look at the diagrams in Figure 22 and use them as a catalyst to pose a question or two. You may wish to recycle old questions-ones posed about the original diagram - or the new diagrams may suggest different questions.

What questions can you pose for each picture? Can you recycle some old questions? Which new ones occur to you?

## Long Division: An Algorithm ${ }^{13}$

Most of us have slaved over some form of long division (at least in our youth!). There are many things to observe about the long-division algorithm. One attribute is that the remainder is always less than the divisor. Thus:

$$
1 7 \longdiv { 4 2 6 6 } = \text { number }+ \text { a remainder }
$$

and the remainder is smaller than 17. Next is the calculation of Sharon, a fourth-grade student first learning the algorithm. She got stuck when she did not know how to divide 17 into 16 .

[^34]

FIG. 22.
$1 7 \longdiv { 4 2 6 6 }$
$\frac{34}{86}$
$\frac{85}{16}$

Then her eyes lit up and she commented, "If I had to divide 17 into 17 , instead of into 16 , I could do it. I would get 1 as a part of the answer. I'm going to make believe that $I$ do have 17 instead of 16 for a minute." She then put 1 in the quotient and wrote " -1 " next to it to indicate that she had to subtract 1 from the product of 251 and 17 to get the check of 4266 as a correct answer. The work she did was:

| $1 7 \longdiv { 2 5 1 }$ |
| :---: |
| $\frac{34}{8266}$ |
| $\frac{85}{16}$ |
| 17 |

What do you think of her procedure? How would you check to determine whether or not the answer is correct? Will the implied new algorithm work in other cases? What attributes of the long division algorithm are challenged by her procedure? What questions does it raise for you?

Explore a few more division problems with negative remainders yourself!
It is worth observing that Sharon has come up with something that may not be merely a cute trick, but that has a more radical potential. In a sense, she has devised an original way of doing long division. What she has done is analogous to what a third grader did several years ago for the case of the standard subtraction algorithm. Here is an account of that similar experience:

A few years ago, in the elementary school in Weston, Connecticut, a third-grade boy named Kye invented a new algorithm for subtracting. His teacher had been solving the problem:
and had said, "We can't subtract eight from four, so we have to regroup the sixty as ..." At this point Kye interrupted, took the chalk, and did this:

Kye said: Kye wrote:

"Oh, yes, you can! Four minus eight is negative four ... | 64 |
| ---: |
| $\frac{-28}{-4}$ |

64
$-28$
$-4$
$\ldots$ and sixty minus twenty is forty ... 40

64
$\frac{-28}{-4}$
40
.. and forty and negative four are thirty-six,
36
so the answer is thirty-six., ${ }^{14}$

You may be asking yourself how these examples relate to the "What-If-Not" scheme. It is obvious from the description that neither Sharon nor Kye was attempting explicitly to do a "What-If-Not" on the standard algorithms. Their approaches were born more out of a sense of desperation (for Sharon) and innocence (for Kye). Although neither of them made explicit use of the "What-If-Not" strategy, their creative responses can inspire us to perform a "What-If-Not." The major contribution each of them has made is to challenge implicitly the assumption (in several places) that we must make use of only positive integers in calculating differences and quotients. It is thus possible for each of us to become aware and to take advantage of other people's challenges to the existing order of things, even when they themselves may be unaware of the radical potential of what they have done.

A beginning list of attributes for their alternative approaches then might involve something like:

[^35]1. The intermediate stages of the calculation all involve positive integers.
2. The answer in all cases is a positive integer (or combination of positive integers).

Notice that an advantage of listing the attributes like this is that now we are led to explore not only the use of negative numbers as Sharon and Kye have done, but other possibilities (such as fractions) as well. A valuable fallout of this discussion is that it exhibits a point we have suggested earlier with regard to the "What-If-Not" scheme-namely, that the levels feed on each other in unanticipated ways. In this case, we see how the inadvertent varying of an attribute can make us explicitly aware of the attribute in the first place, thus standing on its head what would appear to be a more expected, logical order of things.

As we suggested earlier, the value of such "What-If-Not" analysis is not merely the potential it raises for creative activity; there is also value in the insight we can develop with regard to the accepted algorithms. Both students made us aware that we have assumed that the domain for calculation, as well as for answers, is that of the natural numbers, and not that of the negative integers. Even those who have studied number theory and know the long-division algorithm as a more general theorem about quotients and remainders may know the logical derivations but not appreciate the significance that remainders are located uniquely in the range between 0 and the divisor (so that we expect a remainder to be between 0 and 16 in Sharon's example). To understand the significance of such observations, we must find out not only how to prove theorems but we must also realize the consequences of violating the essential conditions of the theorem. Both of these youngsters invite us to do exactly that. We leave the exploration of the significance of Kye's and Sharon's finds for your enjoyment.

## A Construction: The Usual Regular Hexagon Construction Using a Straightedge and Compass ${ }^{15}$

Once we know how to do something in one way, we usually tend to stop thinking about it further. Generally, we do not even ask ourselves why it works. Of course, for many routine activities we do not want to have to think about them; we want to be able to do them automatically so that we can use them for purposes of exploring new problems or to satisfy someone who wants to test our ability to recall associated skills. Certainly this is the case for the standard hexagon construction shown in Figure 23. That construction requires that we inscribe a regular hexagon in a given circle with a straight edge and a compass. The solution makes use of the fact that the length of the radius equals the length of the side of a regular hexagon.

[^36]

FIG. 23.

Still, it is worthwhile to stop to examine even such a routine construction using the "What-If-Not" technique, when we have a quiet moment and wish to explore, rather than merely respond to someone else's demands. What are some attributes of the hexagon construction in Figure 23? They include:

1. The polygon formed is a regular hexagon.
2. Only straightedge and compass were used.
3. The end result is a drawing.
4. A circle was used.
5. One circle was used.
6. Six arcs were drawn on the circle.
7. It assumed that the student knew how to do it.
8. It requires accuracy.
9. It basically makes use of $60^{\circ}$ angles.

Figure 24 shows some drawings that suggest alternate ways of constructing regular hexagons and new related objects on which to pose questions about construction.

For example, Figure 24(a) might suggest the question, "How can you construct a regular hexagon without drawing a circle?" Figure 24(d) might prompt you to ask, "How can you use a circle to find a different construction?" Figure 24(e) may suggest asking how overlapping equilateral triangles can make a hexagon.

Now that you have examined these drawings in the spirit of a "What-If-Not," you have probably uncovered several properties of a regular hexagon that you had not been aware of when you made use of only the standard construction.


FIG. 24.

## Another Problem: An Inscribed Square

Find the area of the square that is inscribed in a right triangle such that it has one side on the base of the triangle (Figure 25a).

In solving this problem you have to decide what really is being asked for in the request to inscribe a square. George Polya has an elegant discussion of the problem of inscribing a square in a right triangle. ${ }^{16} \mathrm{He}$ points out that the squares with one side on the base of the triangle and with one vertex on the side $\overline{\mathrm{AC}}$ of the triangle ABC are related by an enlargement (dilation) with center A. Hence the "free" fourth vertex (e.g., G) of each square of the family of squares will lie on a straight line through $A$ and $G$ (Figure 25b). To construct the fourth vertex of the required inscribed square, all you have to do is to construct the intersection of $\overline{\mathrm{AG}}$ and $\overline{\mathrm{CB}}$.

(a)

(b)

FIG. 25.

The situation is ripe with possibilities for a "What-If-Not" approach, so we can begin by listing some attributes ${ }^{17}$ :

1. The problem deals, in part, with a triangle.
2. The problem deals with a right triangle.
3. The problem deals with an inscribed figure.
4. The inscribed figure is a square.
5. The inscribed figure is to have one side on the base of the triangle.
6. The problem deals with the area of the square.
7. The outside shape is a triangle.
8. Two different shapes are involved.
9. The shapes are in the plane.
[^37]After looking at this list you might wonder "What-If-Not" attribute 6? What could the problem deal with if not with area? A common alternative people choose is perimeter. However, because of Polya's use of loci to solve the original problem, we were led to think about loci in doing a "What-If-Not." Thus, we make the substitution "the problem deals with loci" in attribute 6 . We choose to look at the locus on the fourth vertex of the square. It is a straight line, as we saw earlier. You may not find that fact interesting, but it led us to ask questions about loci under alternate possibilities.

For example, look at attribute 1. (See Figure 26.) What if the triangle were not a triangle? Suppose first that it is a semicircle. (The "base" of the triangle becomes a diameter and the "roof" is changed.) What is the locus of the fourth (free) vertex?


FIG. 26.

Or suppose we maintain the original figure as a semicircle, and create an inscribed figure which is not a square, but a circle. See Figure 27. What is the locus of the centers?


FIG. 27.

We next considered several alternatives-several "What-If-Nots" on our partial list of attributes-and we drew pictures. You may wish to add to the array of pictures after forming your own attributes and your own "What-If-Nots."

The first drawing in Figure 28 indicates the problem as given. Figures 28(b) through 28(h) show some of our alternatives. For each picture in Figure 28, we


FIG. 28.
could ask a question about the areas, perimeters, or loci, or even about some other concept, for there are numerous questions to ask. What questions occur to you?

Polya investigates both cases (a) and (h) of Figure 28. We decided to compare the two areas of the squares- $R$ and $S$. We were surprised when we found that $1 / R-1 / S=1$ if we take the hypotenuse of the right triangle to be of unit length. Just seeing these two squares inscribed in this way made us think of other diagrams. Do the diagrams in Figure 29 encourage you to pose some further problems?


FIG. 29.

## An Activity: Looking at Boxes

We are surrounded by three-dimensional boxes of many different shapes and sizes, made in different ways and fabricated out of numerous types of materials. Have you ever wondered how they are made? Actually, there are a surprising number of practical and theoretical problems to consider when pondering this question.

Suppose we idealize the situation and start by considering a cubical box made of six squares and no flaps. How do you think this box could be put together from one connected piece of cardboard? Try to visualize it! ${ }^{18}$

The first one most people draw looks like this:


Some people draw a different one, or more than one pattern. Check to see if the two patterns in Figure 30 fold into a cube. Just finding all the possible patterns that fold into a cube (still ignoring flaps) is a problem in itself. Since the problem of six squares is quite an involved one, let us step back and consider instead the somewhat simpler one of investigating all possible patterns for making a box without a top, a five-sided box in the shape of a cube. Figure 31(a) shows a few of them. There are eight possible patterns that fold into a cubical box without a top, if you agree to count two shapes, such as shown in Figure 31(b), as the "same" because they are congruent. (You can get one from the other by "flipping.")


FIG. 30.

Now that we have slightly simplified the task, let us complicate life by returning to the original one. We will list some attributes of the original activity-that of arranging six squares that fold into a cubical box.

1. There are six squares.
2. Whole edges are touching.
3. The squares are congruent.

[^38]

FIG. 31.
4. The pattern folds into a solid.
5. The pattern has congruent faces.
6. The solid is regular.
7. The solid is a cube.
8. The shapes are quadrilaterals.
9. The shapes are rectangles (and are squares).
10. The segments are straight.
11. The pattern is in the plane.
12. All the shapes are of one kind.
13. Two patterns are given.
14. The faces are regular.

Now here are a few questions that can come from a "What-If-Not" on this list of attributes and from asking either new questions or recycling old ones.

1. What other solids can you make that have six congruent faces?
2. What six-sided shapes can you make that have six faces, none of which are quadrilaterals?
3. What six-faced shapes can you make from parallelograms?
4. What solids can you make from squares that do not have six faces?
5. How would you recycle all of the above replacing six by five?
6. What solids can you create with equilateral triangles?

Having started with the rather limited problem of how many square patterns there are that fold into a cubical box, we have widened our explorations considerably.

## Prime Numbers ${ }^{19}$

The concept of prime number is a central one in number theory. Recall that a number is prime if it has exactly two different divisors. So $2,3,5,7,11$ are the first few primes in the set of natural numbers. Prime numbers have a history that goes back a long way. Over 2,000 years ago, Euclid settled the question of how many there are by proving that there must be an infinite number of primes-a proof that is brief but one of the most elegant mathematical proofs.

Knowing that there are an infinite number of prime numbers immediately suggests that we might be interested in finding some simple formula that would always yield a prime.

Mathematicians have devoted long periods of time to search for such a formula. In the 16 th through the 18th century, men of the caliber of Mersenne, Fermat, and Euler each had some interesting simple formulas that supposedly generated primes (e.g., $2^{\left(2^{\prime \prime}\right)}+1, n^{2}+n+41$ ) but that also broke down at certain points. In 1947, Mills produced a formula that he proved would always yield primes. He showed that $\left[a^{3^{n}}\right]$ had to work for a fixed $a$ and for every natural number $n .{ }^{20}$ The "joke," as you would expect, is that no one knows what $a$ must be; it is only known that there must exist such an $a$.

One interesting and unsolved problem was created by Goldbach in the early 18th century. He came up with a conjecture that every even number greater than two can be represented as the sum of two primes. Thus:

$$
\begin{aligned}
4 & =2+2 \\
6 & =3+3 \\
12 & =7+5 \\
18 & =7+11
\end{aligned}
$$

In a period of over 250 years, no one has either proven or disproved that conjecture, although interesting (and sometimes humorous) headway has been made on the problem.

There are many properties about prime numbers that do not generate either the mysteriousness of Goldbach's conjecture or the tantalizing quality of Mills's formula. Even gradeschoolers feel comfortable with the observation that every number that is not prime can be expressed as the product of primes in essentially one way. Thus, 630

[^39]can be expressed as $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7$, and no other primes will multiply to yield 630 . Not only do youngsters believe the result, but it is something that can be readily proven.

In all of our discussion so far, it is worth pointing out that our analysis-be it simple, complicated, surprising, or expected-makes an important assumption about the nature of the particular set we are investigating. It is that number theory in general, and prime number theory in particular, assumes that the set we are interested in exploring is that of N , the natural numbers, the positive integers.

Once we make that observation explicit, we open up the possibility of challenging that attribute in a "What-If-Not" spirit. Suppose, for example, that instead of $N=\{1,2,3,4,5,6, \ldots\}$ we select the set $E=\{1,2,4,6,8,10, \ldots\}$, where $E$ is the set of even numbers together with 1 . In this new system, some operations, such as addition, are not closed (that is, when we add two numbers we may "leave" the original set). Other operations are closed, however. For example, when we multiply any two numbers in $E$, we end up with a number in $E$. Since $E$ is closed under multiplication, it makes sense to try to develop the concept of prime there. Notice that if we accept the same definition of prime for $E$ that we did for $N$, then 6 is prime in $E$, for there are only two divisors of 6 in $E$. Two cannot divide 6 in $E$ in the same way that 2 cannot divide 5 in N ! Remember that although $2 \cdot 3=6$ in $\mathrm{N}, 3$ is not a member of E . You may wish to explore what other numbers are prime in E-and you will be surprised by the regularity of the primes in $E$.

As you move your focus from N to E , here are three starting points (again, you will find numerous surprises):

1. After defining even in E, explore Goldbach's conjecture in that system.
2. In N , we know that every number is either prime or can be represented uniquely as the product of primes. In E, look at several nonprimes and see what happens (include 72 as a start), remembering that $5 \cdot 2$ is not an allowable factoring in E , because 5 does not belong to E .
3. Ulam's Spiral

Ulam, a former colleague of Einstein's, was doodling one day and found that if he spiraled the natural numbers as shown in Figure 32, some diagonals are prime-rich and some prime-poor, although none consist only of primes. ${ }^{21}$

Thus, the diagonal with numbers $73,43,21,7,1,3,13,31,57,91$ has a relatively large proportion of primes. Compare that diagonal with the numbers along the diagonal $69,39,17,35,61,95$. Now take the same spiral pattern and fill in the boxes using only elements of $E$. Investigate the nature of primes along diagonals.

If you begin to explore some of the "What-If-Not" suggestions implied in the investigation of E , you will find that some unsolved problems (unsolved for

[^40]

FIG. 32.
centuries) in N have solutions so simple in E that they can be produced by a talented junior high school student. This is the case, for example, with Goldbach's conjecture, which you have already explored. If you maintain the same definition of even in $E$ as you do in $N$ (that a number must be divisible by 2 to be even), then the even numbers greater than 2 are $4,8,12,16,20, \ldots$ That is, with the exception of the number 2, only numbers of the form $4 n$ for $n$ belonging to N are even numbers in E. All other numbers except 1 are prime (why?), and can be expressed as two less than the even numbers in this set. Thus the primes can be expressed as $4 n-2$ for $n$ belonging to N . Now, how do you represent any even number greater than 2 (expressible in the form $4 n$ ) as the sum of 2 primes? One obvious way is:

$$
4 n=(4 n-2)+2
$$

and a problem that has plagued mathematicians for centuries in N curls up in embarrassment in E!

Thus in exploring the "What-If-Nots" of E derived from N you can gain a better appreciation for the depth of certain properties and characteristics of $N$. You can do even better than that, however, for you get a glimpse of a very interesting phenomenon that is more general. You sometimes discover that when you make modifications in something you are investigating, it turns out to have drastically different consequences than you might have anticipated!

## "Rational" Behavior ${ }^{22}$

It has become standard fare in algebra courses to take equations and graph them. It is done so unreflectively that we frequently neglect to appreciate the ingenuity of the idea, an ingenuity that harkens back several centuries to the mind of Descartes. The basic notion is that we can establish a correspondence between points in the plane and pairs of real numbers (the coordinates of the points). That correspondence enables us to reduce what appears to be a problem in algebra to one in geometry and vice versa. From this association between points and pairs of numbers we can investigate properties, such as conditions of intersection for straight lines, by interpreting the task as involving the solution of equations.

In that spirit, we reduce information about a given line to an equation of the form $y=m x+b$, where $m$ is the slope of the line, $b$ is the $y$ intercept, and $(x, y)$ represents an arbitrary point. Given the pairs of coordinates for any two points, we can easily come up with the equation for a straight line connecting those points. If we take two such equations for any two lines in the plane, we can find their point of intersection.

All of this leads to results that are expected and somewhat dull. One way to put some life into a dull situation is to explore some of the standard material with an interesting "What-If-Not." Let us, for example focus on the nature of the points we select in the plane. We know, for example, that some numbers (like $2 / 3,-7 / 5$ ) are rational numbers, and others (like $\sqrt{2}, \sqrt[3]{7 / 2}$ ) are not rational; that is, they cannot be reduced to some number of the form $\mathrm{a} / \mathrm{b}$ for a and b integers. By looking at the rational/irrational nature of points along a line, we find that there is a fascinating and hidden world still to be uncovered even after we know how to locate the intersection points of straight lines, either algebraically or geometrically.

Let us now begin an investigation of straight lines in the plane by focusing on only rational points (Figure 33). Take any two points in the plane, each of which has two rational coordinates. For example, choose $\mathrm{R}(16 / 15,11 / 15)$ and $\mathrm{S}(31 / 6,23 / 12)$. Connect the points with a straight line. Select any other two points both of which have two rational coordinates, for example, $\mathrm{P}(5 / 4,13 / 7)$ and $\mathrm{Q}(34 / 5,15 / 16)$ and do the same. Now, calculate the coordinates of the point of intersection T of the two lines and notice the nature of its coordinates. Are both coordinates of T rational? Irrational? Or are they mixed?

From an algebraic point of view, the nature of the coordinates-that they are both rational-is not surprising. Try a few more rational choices for coordinates for points $P, Q, R, S$. You may wish to prove that for any rational choices of coordinates, the intersection point T will also be rational.

From the point of view of probability theory, however, the conclusion of rationality for the point of intersection is surprising because the probability that the coordinates of a point in the plane selected at random will be rational is zero. This suggests that the attribute of rationality associated with each of the coordinates may

[^41]

FIG. 33.
be more special than we would have guessed. It was the disparity between an algebraic and a probability expectation that accounted for our initial interest in this phenomenon.

Now direct your attention to the attribute of rationality and investigate the implications of some alternatives. We will first need to clarify the concept of rationality and its variation in our investigation. One way to begin would be to define a point as:

- rational if both coordinates are rational (as we have done here);
- irrational if both coordinates are irrational;
- semi-rational otherwise.

As a start, we might consider the concept of rationality (and variations of it) for:
(a) points along a line, or
(b) intersection points of lines.

We might begin our investigation of (a) by asking questions like:

1. Can you have a straight line with only one rational point?
2. Can you have a straight line with only two rational points?
3. Can you have a straight line with only three rational points?
4. How are our answers affected by replacing rational with irrational or semirational in the questions above?

After investigating these questions for the lines themselves, look at the nature of (b) - pairs of lines intersecting. Once you appreciate that it is more of a surprise than originally anticipated for any two lines, each having two pairs of rational coordinates, to intersect in a rational point, you will have acquired a much more skeptical mind-set with regard to expectations for the case of irrational or semi-rational coordinates.

## "Distributing" Things ${ }^{23}$

One of the hallmarks of a modern mathematics program is its focus on the axiomatic nature of a system. Looking, for example, at the natural numbers, we can observe that among the critical properties for addition and multiplication are the commutative and the associative properties. Thus:

$$
\begin{gathered}
a+b=b+a ; a \cdot b=b \cdot a \quad \text { (commutative properties) } \\
a+(b+c)=(a+b)+c ; a \cdot(b \cdot c)=(a \cdot b) \cdot c \quad \text { (associative properties) }
\end{gathered}
$$

There has been a lot of controversy since the early 1960s regarding the value of basing a mathematics program primarily on the axiomatic structure, and recently there has been a resurgence of interest in such areas as application to the real world and to problem solving in general as alternatives.

Although these altematives are certainly worth taking seriously, one reason a structural approach has received considerable criticism is that it tends to engender a "much ado about nothing" attitude-that is, people find a complicated way of justifying something they believed to be true without all the fanfare. It is often claimed, for example, that every child knows that $5+7=7+5$, regardless of whether or not he or she is aware that the name of the property that justifies it is the commutative property.

It is possible, however, to use parts of the structure of mathematics to encourage inquiry that is not a trivialization of axioms already understood in some intuitive sense. Let us choose to do a "What-If-Not" on the distributive property as an illustration. The distributive property asserts algebraically something that is more easily conveyed in the picture of the rectangular region (Figure 34). Notice that the area of the entire rectangle can be gotten by adding the areas of A and B . Thus $a \cdot(b+c)=a \cdot b+a \cdot c$. This algebraic statement is referred

[^42]

FIG. 34.
to as the distributive property, and, like the commutative and associative properties, is something we use intuitively to help us do shortcut calculations. For example, if we calculate $20 \cdot 32$ in our heads by doing $(20 \cdot 30)+(20 \cdot 2)$, we are in fact using the distributive property. Among the attributes of that property is the observation that unlike the associative and commutative ones, it ties together the two operations of addition and multiplication in one statement.

There are a various "What-If-Nots" you can generate based on this observation. Consider one that suggests switching the roles of the two operations: What if we did not have $a \cdot(b+c)$ but rather $a+(b \cdot c)$ as our point of entry? Then, an analogy with the traditional distributive property would suggest that $a+(b \cdot c)=(a+b) \bullet(a+c)$, a "dual" of the distributive property, instead of the standard distributive law.

Now a little exploration reveals that this dual distributive property does not hold in general in the set of real numbers (or even in the set of natural numbers for that matter). For example, $2+(3 \cdot 7)$ does not equal $(2+3) \cdot(2+7)$. But the fact that something sometimes fails does not imply that it always fails. If $a=0$, it seems pretty straightforward to observe that $a+(b \cdot c)=(a+b) \cdot(a+c)$. Are there any other cases of success?

With only a slight desire to tease, we suggest you try $a=1 / 3, b=1 / 5, c=7 / 15$. Check it out. Now what is so special about the triple $1 / 3,1 / 5,7 / 15$, that yields a true instance of the dual of the distributive property? Try adding up the three fractions, and you'll get a clue. Try to state and prove a conjecture based on this observation.

In closing this section, we should point out that an exploration of the disparity in truth value between the original distributive property and its dual has the possibility of leading to some fascinating investigation. If we create a dual by switching addition and multiplication, we notice that both commutative and associative properties have duals that are true, while the distributive property has a dual that fails. It was this observation that first served as a general starting point for our investigating the concept of dual in the set of real numbers. It led to the analysis of a
question that you might wish to investigate further, "How can you tell before trying to prove any theorem in a system such as that of the real numbers, whether or not it is necessary to invoke the distributive property in the proof?" ${ }^{24}$

There are several messages embedded in this example that outstrip a particular focus on the distributive property. In investigating the dual, what we have done in a more general way is perform a reversal. That is, we noticed one attribute of the distributive property. The property links addition with multiplication. Then we switched the roles of addition and multiplication, as indicated here:


So, we have varied an attribute in a very special way-by interchanging the two operations. After varying the attribute in this special way, we, of course, had another step to perform, as indicated in the "What-If-Not" scheme. That is, we had to ask a question. Let us look at what went on in this example in "slow motion" so as to reveal some issues of a more general nature.

## Salvaging a Question

When first looking at the new distributive property, our inclination was to ask if it always holds, just as the standard distributive property holds for all numbers. An example chosen at random revealed that it did not always hold. Our first inclination was to move on, rather than to think about further investigation. It took a few seconds, however, to disengage the investigation of the new property from the old, and venture a question about the new one that we never would have asked about the old-namely, "Does it ever hold?" We showed by producing one example ( $a=1 / 3, b=1 / 5$ and $c=7 / 15$ ) that it does hold in at least one case and implied that it might hold in others as well.

Further investigation of this observation led to an analysis of the fascinating question we mentioned earlier, "How can you tell before proving a theorem (in a field structure) whether or not the distributive property is needed?" A more general question might be, "How can you tell before trying to prove anything in a system whether or not a specific property of the system is needed?" It is not always possible to find the answer for this question, but in those cases in which we can find an answer, we reveal more about the structure of the system than we ever imagined.

[^43]There is much embedded in the observation that we modified the question in the new setup from "Does the dual of the distributive property always hold?" to "Does it ever hold?"

Recall that earlier we claimed that foolish or nonsensical questions might be a hair's breadth away from worthwhile ones. It is also the case, however, that questions that are initially meaningful may lead to results that are not too interesting (e.g., that the new distributive property is not always true). A slight modification of a meaningful but dull question, however, can lead to astounding results.

Look again at our handy list of questions at the end of chapter 3. Do the questions we have asked about the dual of the distributive property appear there? Perhaps you would like to add new ones suggested by this exploration that do not appear.

## The Anatomy of Reversals

Reversal is a kind of "What-If-Not" we performed on the attribute of operations in this example. We just switched addition and multiplication signs and asked some new questions. But there are many ways in which we can try to reverse an attribute or a phenomenon. Let us look at our previous section on prime numbers, for example. There we spoke about Goldbach's conjecture in the set of natural numbers: that any even number greater than two can be expressed as the sum of two primes. In that section, we did a "What-If-Not" on the conjecture to see what happens if we investigate an old question in a new set.

We could, however, have not challenged the given set of numbers (changing from the natural numbers to the even numbers together with 1) but rather asked a kind of question again suggested in Strategy for Phase One Problem Generation in chapter 3. A beautiful pseudo-historical question might be, "How did anyone ever come up with that conjecture?"

If we are doing pseudo-history, we are not concerned about historical accuracy. One conjecture that comes to mind is suggested by a different conception of reversal than we have demonstrated so far. Suppose we look at a converse of Goldbach's conjecture: Any two primes added together yield an even number. As it stands the converse is false, for if exactly one of the primes is 2 , then the sum will be odd. Let us modify the converse slightly, however:

The sum of any two primes (excluding the number 2), is an even number.
That is a true statement if we observe that all primes in $N$ other than 2 are odd numbers, and if we appreciate that the sum of any two odds is an even number. The statement is not only true, but child's play to prove, while Goldbach's conjecture has challenged the best of mathematicians for 250 years!

Now, given the preceding discussion, how might Goldbach have come up with his conjecture? A good pseudo-historical approach would be to suggest
that after playing with the "trivial" observation that primes added in pairs yield even numbers (well almost always), he may very well have asked himself, "What if I look at the converse?"

So far, then, we have looked at two kinds of reversal: switching the operations of a statement, and switching the logic of a statement (looking at the converse).

Thus, we have a tool (reversal) for:

1. Modifying attributes.
2. Asking questions.

In a Pulitzer prize-winning book of 1980, Douglas Hofstadter also explores the issue of reversal, but from a slightly different point of view. ${ }^{25} \mathrm{He}$ locates the roots of creativity in the fields of mathematics, music, and art in a special kind of reversal, the reversal of "figure and ground." He points out how creative work in all these fields frequently depends on switching what is in the forefront of investigation with what is in the background. Perceptually, the expression is conveyed by such drawings as in the sketch below.


Is it a vase or two people facing each other?
Hofstadter goes on to indicate that Bach fugues were created in a similar vein, and he then points to the roots of some deep metamathematical results (Gödel's theorems) through figure-ground reversal.

So far, then, we have described three different conceptions of reversal. Can you come up with others? Try to use these conceptions of reversal in new applications of the "What-If-Not" scheme.

[^44]
## Use of Technology : Starting with an Equilateral Triangle Problem

Eric Knuth, in his article "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity," ${ }^{26}$ makes rich use of the "What-If-Not?" problem-posing scheme. He presents two problems that illustrate ways for teachers to engage students in problem posing and in so doing to foster mathematical curiosity. Here we wish to focus on his second problem because he gives both a technology-based solution and an analytic solution for it. He starts with the simple diagram shown in Figure 35(a) for which he says students are often asked only to prove that the area of triangle DEF is one fourth the area of triangle ABC .


FIG. 35.

Before reading his very enticing discussion, you might first want to ask yourself what problems you can pose in a free association way without using any special problem-posing techniques that we have discussed in this book. Then continue by using any of the techniques we have explicitly discussed (such as "What-If-Not?," creating reversals, and so forth) or perhaps by using questions we have raised only in passing. Finally, you might want to record any new kinds of questions or problem posing techniques you created that went beyond free association.

In making use of the "What-If-Not?" scheme, one of the questions Knuth asks is the following : "What if we place each of the points $\mathrm{D}, \mathrm{E}$, and F one-third of the way, three-fourths of the way, or any other fractional part of the way from one end of their line segments to the other? ${ }^{י 27}$ See Figure 35(b). For these changed situations, Knuth then explores the original question of how the areas of such inner and outer triangles compare. He first gives a technologically based solution using the Geometer's Sketchpad. He does this by creating a dynamic triangle, which, as he drags a vertex, shows not only midpoints and trisection points but all other divisions. For each of these selections, Knuth asks the Geometer's Sketchpad to calculate and show the ratio of the area of the inner to the area of the outer triangle. If you have the Sketchpad or any other such program, we urge you to replicate all that Knuth did and watch what happens to the ratios of the areas as you change the division point of the sides.

[^45]Knuth then asks: "Does a general relationship exist between the ratio of the sides and the ratio of the areas? ${ }^{228}$ He explores and then answers that question in the form of a conjecture by using the help of various features of the Geometer's Sketchpad. He then also offers an analytic proof of his conjecture. Knuth raises other questions. What if the triangle is not equilateral? What if the original polygon is not a triangle but a square? He uses the Geometer's Sketchpad to help him investigate these questions as well. Solutions to these problems, as well as additional extensions, are provided in a follow-up article, "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity: Highlighting the Mathematics." ${ }^{, 29}$ What do you think some of these extensions were?

## A Second Use of Technology: An Unexpected Hexagon

As in the previous example, the starting point is a simple diagram. Draw any triangle and its three medians. What do you notice? The fact that the three medians meet in a point is something that students can conjecture easily after drawing several different triangles and their medians. By using a dynamic geometry program and dragging a vertex, we can observe that as the triangle changes, the medians remain concurrent. That really strengthens the belief in the conjecture that the medians of a triangle are concurrent-something that can be proved analytically.

Here we focus on changing just one attribute of the diagram, namely: Each vertex is joined to the midpoint of the opposite side. Let us then ask: What if it were not so? One possible "What-If-Not?" for your diagram is to ask: What if you join each vertex of the triangle, not to the midpoints of the opposite sides, but to some other locations on the opposite sides? One alternative is to join each vertex to the two trisection points of the opposite sides. Try doing this using a dynamic geometry program. Even if you do not have one, however, you can proceed by drawing the diagram. Look at your new diagram carefully. The six segments you drew in your triangle no longer pass through one point. Notice that a hexagon appears. For the medians, a question we might have posed is: Are the medians always concurrent? What new question can you ask now? There are of course many questions we could ask. Among them are: Is a hexagon always formed? Is this hexagon ever regular? If so, when? Or we could ask: What is the area of the hexagon?

We can ask the Geometer's Sketchpad to calculate the area of the hexagon as well as the area of the outside triangle. For each triangle formed, as the vertex is dragged, the answers are shown on the screen of the Sketchpad program. There are many ways in which you might want to compare the area of each hexagon with the area of the triangle in which it was formed. What are some ways that occur to

[^46]you? We focus on just one: What is the ratio of the area of the hexagon to the area of the triangle? Would you like to guess the answer to that question? We place the result in a footnote so as not to ruin the surprise, which led to a conjecture that was subsequently established as a theorem. ${ }^{30}$

Notice that so far, in this example, we focused only on one attribute and one "What-If-Not?" for it. You will find it worthwhile to explore other "What-IfNots?" and to explore some of the new conjectures you may make. Can you see that if you then go back and focus on one or more different attributes you will get much material for further explorations and conjectures? Because a dynamic geometry program can produce not only the drawings we instruct it to make but can also calculate quantities like area, length, angle, sums, differences, and ratios, the output of such a tool can help us greatly to make conjectures. ${ }^{31}$ While we are usually aware of the fact that a conjecture is not a proof, it is possible to be lulled into believing otherwise when the computer supplies us with so many positive instances.

## SUMMARY

In this chapter, we have chosen a diverse set of mathematical ideas as starting points. We have selected concepts from algebra, geometry, number theory and have even had some probability theory sneak its way in. As in chapter 3, we have exemplified a different type of diversity as well. We have used data, a problem, an algorithm, and even an activity as points of departure for problem generating. In all of these variations, we have tried to uncover not only a sense of creativity associated with "What-If-Not," but have tried to show how this process frequently enables us to uncover unsuspected depth in starting points that may appear pedestrian. We have done this in part by demonstrating how even apparently slight modifications of a phenomenon frequently have a drastic effect. Problems that have been unsolved for centuries in one context reveal themselves with ease in

[^47]others (as in the case of Goldbach's conjecture, as well as in many of the other number theory problems). What we take for granted as easy and unsurprising reveals itself as possessing unsuspected depth when subjected to a "What-If-Not" procedure. On the other hand, we have shown that the existence of surprise can act as an invitation to perform a "What-If-Not" in the first place.

In addition, we exhibited throughout this chapter a phenomenon alluded to earlier. That is, we showed how apparently meaningless observations or questions can be significantly rejuvenated through the injection of a "What-If-Not" point of view. In many of the examples here, we made use not only of the "What-If-Not" scheme, but of the problem generating strategies described in chapter 3-strategies such as using pseudo-history, distinguishing between internal and external exploration of phenomena, and employing the handy list of questions.

We also explored the category of reversals (conceiving of the phenomenon in several different ways) as a way of both modifying attributes and of asking new questions.

We ended this chapter with two mathematical examples that made use of one technology tool-a dynamic geometry program. ${ }^{32}$ Both these examples illustrate the power of just one technology tool, the Geometer's Sketchpad. We suggest you look back at some of the other snippets in this chapter and ask yourself where you might want to use technology to see if it would enhance your inclination to generate and verify new conjectures. Using also other starting points, we encourage teachers and students to employ problem-posing techniques using dynamic software or other technology tools to help you make conjectures.

Despite the fact that the technology has been helpful, it is important to appreciate that the conjectures just made depended on noticing something special that could be modified in an original situation. In an important sense then, although technology has been helpful, it cannot in and of itself replace imagination and an inclination to see things differently.

After engaging in a lot of What-if-Not activity and also in the other techniques of problem posing that we have discussed, you too will find yourself making use of the various levels summarized in Figure 11, but without explicitly going through them. ${ }^{33}$

[^48]
## 6

## Some Natural Links Between Problem Posing and Problem Solving

We have been discussing and analyzing problem posing, and in the process we became involved in problem solving as well. In this chapter, we pinpoint a number of ways in which the two activities illuminate each other in subtle and not so subtle ways. For example, we review and further explore how solving a problem may not only enable us to come up with an answer to a problem that has been posed, but may also help us to appreciate unexpected features of the problem as well. In the process, we will demonstrate the richness and ambiguity of the meaning of "why." We begin by looking at one example.

## ONE EXAMPLE IN DETAIL

Consider the following problem:

Given two equilateral triangles, find a third one whose area is equal to the sum of the areas of the other two.

Try to solve it before reading on.

## A Beginning

There are many questions you may be asking at this point, such as:

1. We have been provided with neither the lengths nor the areas of the two original triangles. Are we to find the area of the third triangle without that information? What context is assumed and what theorems are relevant?
2. Not only have we not been given specific lengths or areas, but the lengths or areas of the two triangles have not been denoted by variables. Are we expected to solve this problem algebraically using variables?
3. Since in the preceding problem no numbers are associated with line segments or regions, can we construct the answer purely geometrically?

Before discussing these matters, we should point out that when the kind of information just requested is provided at the outset, our view of the problem may be limited as we are robbed of the opportunity of asking these kinds of questions.

Let us now take each of the queries, in turn, to see how each leads to a different kind of approach, understanding, and insight.

## Three Different Analyses

## For Those Who Like to Start With Numbers

Consider 3 and 7 as our given lengths. Let us rephrase the problem:
Find the length of the side of an equilateral triangle whose area is equal to the sum of the areas of two equilateral triangles of sides 3 and 7 (Figure 36).


FIG. 36.

Using the Pythagorean theorem (and assuming $h_{1}, h_{2}$, and $h_{3}$ are the three altitudes) we obtain:

$$
h_{1}=\frac{3 \sqrt{3}}{2}, h_{2}=\frac{7 \sqrt{3}}{2}
$$

Then using the fact that the area of a triangle is one half the length of the base times the altitude, if the areas are $A_{1}, A_{2}$ and $A_{3}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{1} & =\frac{3 \cdot 3 \sqrt{3}}{4} \\
A_{2} & =\frac{7 \cdot 7 \sqrt{3}}{4} \\
A_{3}=A_{1}+A_{2} & =\frac{\sqrt{3} \cdot(9+49)}{4} \\
=\frac{\sqrt{3} \cdot 58}{4} & =\frac{29 \cdot \sqrt{3}}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

To find the side $l_{3}$ of the required new triangle, using the formula for the area of an equilateral triangle, we might proceed as follows:

$$
A_{3}=\frac{l_{3}^{2} \sqrt{3}}{4}=\frac{29 \sqrt{3}}{2}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
l_{3}{ }^{2} & =\frac{29 \sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot \frac{4}{\sqrt{3}} \\
& =29 \cdot 2=58
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
l_{3}=\sqrt{58}
$$

This solves the problem of finding the length of the side of the required triangle. If we had wanted the area, we could have stopped when we found that

$$
A_{3}=\frac{29 \sqrt{3}}{2}
$$

Do you have any new insights or new questions at this point? Perhaps you might want to try this example with different numbers, such as 3 and 3,3 and 4 , or 9 and 40 , in order to get a feeling for approaching the problem by choosing specific numbers for the lengths of the sides.

This is, of course, just one way of interpreting the problem. Let us now turn to a closely related second method.

## For Those Who Prefer to Start With Variables

Find the length $t_{3}$ of the side of an equilateral triangle whose area is equal to the sum of the areas of two equilateral triangles of sides $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$. (See Figure 37.)


FIG. 37.

Following the arguments from the previous section, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{1}=\frac{t_{1}{ }^{2} \sqrt{3}}{4} \\
& A_{2}=\frac{t_{2}{ }^{2} \sqrt{3}}{4} \\
& A_{1}+A_{2}=\frac{t_{1}{ }^{2} \sqrt{3}+t_{2}{ }^{2} \sqrt{3}}{4}=A_{3}=t_{3}{ }^{2} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $t_{3}=\sqrt{t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}}$. Do you have any further insights at this point?

## For Those Who Enjoy Using Segments and Regions

Look back at the two previous approaches. What is suggested by those analyses? If $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ are given line segments, how can we construct line segment $t_{3}$ ? Using a
straightedge and compass, we could construct $t_{1}{ }^{2}$ from $t_{1}, t_{2}{ }^{2}$ from $\mathrm{t}_{2}$, and then $\sqrt{t_{1}{ }^{1}+t_{2}{ }^{2}}{ }^{1}$. Notice that unlike the problem of merely adding two line segments-by joining them without actually measuring their lengths-this construction requires the provision of a unit length as well.

However, there is a way out that does not require a unit. Since $t_{3}$ is equal to $\sqrt{t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}}$, we are reminded of the Pythagorean relationship $t_{3}{ }^{2}=t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}$. Therefore, we could have solved the problem as indicated in Figure 38.

Notice that solving the problem this way does not require that we be given $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ relative to a unit length. Despite the elegance of this solution, however, a mystery prevails. Although the algebra suggests this geometric approach, the algebraic link is not particularly illuminating. Is there some essentially geometric rather than algebraic way of seeing directly why we are led to the Pythagorean theorem?


FIG. 38.
${ }^{1}$ The construction of $\sqrt{t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}}$ depends on the two theorems suggested by the pictures here:


$$
\frac{1}{t_{1}}=\frac{t_{1}}{x}
$$


$\frac{1}{y}=\frac{y}{t_{1}^{2}+t_{2}^{2}}$

Therefore $x$ is equal to $t_{1}{ }^{2}$.
First construct $t_{1}{ }^{2}$ as on the left. Do the same for $t_{2}{ }^{2}$. Then combine to get $t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}$, and construct the desired result as indicated by the drawing on the right. Note that a unit length is assumed for both constructions.

## PROBLEM SOLVING YIELDS PROBLEM POSING

## Asking "Why"

The question just posed (Is there some essentially geometric way of seeing directly why we are led to the Pythagorean theorem?) suggests that "Why?" is an ambiguous question. The reply that it follows from the calculation (because $t_{3}{ }^{2}=t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}$ ), an answer that is often given, seems at first to be satisfying. However, on further reflection, this reply provides little insight into the situation and, in fact, does not really explain why this result might be expected. The "why" to which we seek an answer here is of a different type; it calls for an explanation that gives us both understanding and insight into the situation. We are left wondering if the solution of our equilateral triangle problem-leading us to the Pythagorean theorem-may be a coincidence or an accident of calculation. Rather, it could be the result of deeper connections, connections we are striving to understand more clearly. The connection is not illuminated by merely carrying out the calculation, although of course it was the calculation that made us aware of the connection originally. We are really asking, "Could we have suspected that the solution of our problem would involve the Pythagorean theorem without doing any algebraic-type calculation?" When our conclusions surprise us and we wish to know why they occurred (in the sense of what "caused" the result), a reply that merely retreads the steps of the solution is often not satisfying.

There are other interpretations of "Why?" however. Frequently, when we ask why something is the case in mathematics (after having received some answer), we are really asking, "Is this a special case of a broader generalization or is it a fluke that stands alone?" For instance, if we discover that the medians of a $30^{\circ}, 60^{\circ}$, $90^{\circ}$ triangle meet in a point, we might be tempted to ask "Why?" even after we have demonstrated it, to determine if it is a specific instance of a more general case. However, when we find out that $5+3+13=21$ (assuming no further context), we would probably not ask "Why?" because we would be satisfied that if follows directly from calculation.

As you can see from these few examples, it seems that asking the question "Why?" can be done on several levels. Let us note that one of the prime problem posing strategies in mathematics-asking why-is more complicated and interesting than appears on the surface.

Now, let us turn to one way of answering "Why?" more specifically, for the problem concerning the construction of an equilateral triangle equal in area to the sum of the areas of two given equilateral triangles.

## Answering "Why?"

## Background

We have a feeling that the Pythagorean theorem is at the root of this problem. Let us examine it once more. When considered as a geometric statement, the theorem says that the square on the hypotenuse of a right triangle equals the sum of the squares on the other two sides. In a specific example in which two legs are 3 and 4, we can come up empirically with 25 as the area of the square on the hypotenuse by drawing an "accurate" picture (see Figure 39).


FIG. 39.

How might we gain a deeper understanding of the Pythagorean theorem? Look once more at the statement describing the geometric interpretation of a theorem. What is it talking about? For one thing, it is saying something about the relationship of areas.

Suppose we squint a little and try to find a less literal or a broader interpretation of that relationship. The three figures on the sides are special figures, namely, squares. Instead of drawing only squares on the three sides, what other shapes might we consider? (See Figure 40.)

If we depict the sides by $a, b, c$ and the areas by I, II, and III, respectively, what relationships might we search for? Holding the Pythagorean theorem in mind, we might be inclined to ask, "Which figures (see Figure 40) have areas that are additive?" (That is, $\mathrm{I}+\mathrm{II}=\mathrm{III}$.)

For some of the figures it is fairly straightforward to calculate areas of regions drawn on the sides of a right triangle. For example, in Figure 40(a), the three semicircles have area:

$$
\frac{\pi(3 / 2)^{2}}{2}, \frac{\pi(4 / 2)^{2}}{2}, \frac{\pi(5 / 2)^{2}}{2}
$$

and $\mathrm{I}+\mathrm{II}=\mathrm{III}$. Look at Figure 40 (c) -parallelograms with indicated dimensions. Once more, we get from straightforward calculation that $\mathrm{I}+\mathrm{II}=\mathrm{III}$.

Examine Figure 40(b), (d), and (e). Although the calculation is also straightforward, we need to make use of the Pythagorean theorem in order to demonstrate additivity, despite the fact that we are no longer dealing with squares on the three sides of the right triangles.

It comes as a real surprise that not only are the areas additive for squares, but they are also additive for sets of other figures. Is there some phenomenon more general than squareness that accounts for additivity? Notice that in all cases but Figure


FIG. 40 .

40(c), the shapes are similar! Can you now rephrase the Pythagorean theorem in a more general form? Although there are many ways of generalizing it, we should like to focus on this conjecture:

> If three similar figures are constructed on three sides of a right triangle, then the areas are additive; that is, the sum of the areas on the legs equals the area on the hypotenuse.

Notice, then, that the Pythagorean theorem itself is a specific example of this conjecture-namely, the special one when the three figures are squares.

## Back to the Equilateral Triangle

Now that we have extended our view of the Pythagorean theorem, let us see if it can help us gain insight into the solution of our problem and help us answer why-other than as a surprise consequence of calculation-the Pythagorean theorem is implicated in a problem dealing with equilateral triangles. If this conjecture is true, then we can finally see why they Pythagorean connection to our original problem for equilateral triangles makes sense. Figure 41 is just an instance of the more generalized Pythagorean theorem, with the similar figures being equilateral triangles. We could therefore solve the problem that appeared at the beginning of this chapter by constructing two segments joined at right angles so that each segment is a side of the given equilateral triangle. If we now join the ends of the two segments, we have the hypotenuse of a right triangle, and the segment along the hypotenuse is then the side of the desired equilateral triangle. Thus, by drawing an equilateral triangle on the hypotenuse, we obtain an equilateral triangle equal in area to the sum of the other two!

Notice that here we have an elegant solution to our original problem (finding an equilateral triangle equal in area to the sum of the areas of the two given equilateral triangles). The solution is elegant because it is simple, unexpected, and requires


FIG. 41.
that only the sides of the two equilateral triangles be given rather than the lengths of the sides or the areas of the original triangles. We have thus answered "Why?" in a way that places the problem in a broader perspective than if we had merely calculated to find $t_{3}=\sqrt{t_{1}{ }^{2}+t_{2}{ }^{2}}{ }^{2}$.

## REFLECTIONS ON NATURAL LINKS

## "The After Effect"

There are a number of interesting problem-posing issues beneath the surface in the previous example. First, we allowed ourselves and encouraged you to explore a problem that was vaguely defined. We did not stipulate at the beginning whether numbers (lengths or areas) were to be associated with the equilateral triangles or segments or regions. We did not specify whether we were looking for algebraic or geometric solutions, nor did we indicate the geometric tools of analysis that were to be considered relevant.

We may well be robbed of a great deal of serious thinking by insisting on clarity at early stages in the definition of problems. It is worthwhile to investigate all the different ways in which "the given" can be interpreted, as well as how the analysis might depend on the different assumptions and tools we allow ourselves to use. In fact, we frequently prevent ourselves from seeing that the clarification of a problem is itself a significant intellectual task. It can lead to posing and solving many interesting problems along the way, as well as to a deeper understanding of what is involved. Unfortunately, many of us equate "clearly stated" with "good" in the posing of problems.

The second problem-posing issue we have suggested is that it is worth asking "Why?" with many different intentions; that is, some "whys" call for calculation, some for insight into a gestalt, some for a broader generalization.

But there is a third point embedded here that is even more critical for the purpose of exposing natural links between problem posing and problem solving: It is after we have supposedly solved a problem that we are pressed to ask some new questions. It is because we are surprised, puzzled, or confused by an approach we have taken or a conclusion we have reached that we feel compelled to ask a new set

[^49]of questions. Indeed, why do the areas of equilateral triangles add up on the sides of a right triangle the way the squares do in the Pythagorean theorem?

In the previous section of this chapter, we jumped rather quickly to the hunch that perhaps the shared property of similarity among the three polygons (for equilateral triangles and squares) accounted for the unexpected conclusion. You could, of course, explore other first hunches for why the areas are additive. Perhaps the fact that the polygons are regular (equilateral and equiangular) might account for the result, or could it be that there is some other explanation?

Our main point here is that frequently it is only after we have solved a problem that we are in a position to pose a new set of questions that we did not see as relevant beforehand.

We now have both a logical observation that connects problem solving with problem posing and a new problem generating heuristic: Take an alleged proof that either surprises you or lacks illumination. Then generate new sets of questions which might diminish the surprise or increase the illumination.

Here is another example to illustrate the point. In chapter 4, we alluded to the Gauss example for finding the sum of the numbers from 1 to 100 . We suggested a strategy for solving, namely, to observe that if properly perceived, we really had many pairs of numbers with sums of 101 . In this way we can get the solution to the original problem. However, most people who see this approach are prompted to ask a number of new questions because they are still puzzled. Looking back, do you find yourself dissatisfied? If so, what questions does your discomfort spark in you?

Here are some questions that we have found others asking after they had been shown the Gauss solution and after they had played around with the problem for a while:

1. How did anyone even come up with this approach?
2. Suppose the last number in the original sum were not 100 , but some other number. Would it still work?
3. Is there something special about the fact that the last number is even? What would happen if the sum ended at 99 instead of 100 ?
4. Is there some general formula that captures this clever observation?
5. To what extent can I capture the overall, general situation in this specific observation?

There are of course many other questions that you might ask here. We could even ask how these questions might be different if you had seen the geometric approach to the sum of consecutive integers described in chapter 5 (footnote 8). We should clarify that here we are not trying to generate new questions, as we did when we were "What-If-Not-ing"; rather, we are trying to generate questions with a specific goal in mind-namely, to help us understand why a particular conclusion, which has supposedly been proven, is meaningful.

## The "Prior Effect"

There is a second natural link between problem posing and problem solving-one in which the temporal order just described is reversed. That is, we need not wait until after we have solved a problem to generate new questions; rather, we may be logically obligated to generate a new question or pose a new problem in order to be able to solve a problem in the first place.

We illustrate this point with another problem that we would like you to think about. First look at the problem, and then write down, as accurately as you can, all of the ideas that occur to you as you try to solve it in the next 10 minutes.

> A fly and train are 15 km apart. The train travels toward the fly at a rate of $3 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{hr}$. The fly travels toward the train at a rate of $7 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{hr}$. After hitting the train, it heads back to its starting point. After hitting the starting point, it once more heads back toward the train until they meet. The process continues. What is the total distance this fly travels?

With some insight, it is possible to solve the problem with almost no machinery, despite the fact that it first may appear to be a problem involving an infinite geometric progression. What is that insight?

It is clear from the question that we are being asked to focus on the fly. That is the object whose distance we wish to calculate. Yet a brief disengagement from our focus that directs our attention (even momentarily) to the train has the potential of unleashing some powerful insights. If we ask, "How far does the train travel?" then the problem becomes easier to analyze. We were given this information in the problem. Having asked that new question which redirects our perspective on the problem, it takes only a small leap to ask, "How long does it take the train to travel that distance?"

With some additional visual imagery, we might reach the conclusion that the time of travel is the same for both objects. This observation essentially unlocks the problem.

Now there are many ways of gaining insight on this problem, and you need not necessarily follow the chain of thinking just outlined. What we are claiming, however, is that something tantamount to the generation of some new question(s) is part of the problem-solving act.

Before turning to a less fanciful example, we would like to pass on a delightful story told about this problem. John Von Neumann (1903-1957) was a Hungarian mathematician who emigrated to the United States in 1930. The founder of game theory and other important mathematical topics, he was capable of calculating in his head at a speed that compared favorably with the computers of his day. When a friend gave him the fly/train problem, he got the answer in less than a second. When his friend congratulated him on his solution, telling Von Neumann that most people
try to get the answer by finding the sum of an infinite progression-a quite time-consuming task-Von Neumann responded, "Is there any other way to do it"?

## A More Mundane Example

The Art of Problem Posing came close to reaching a disastrous fate as we argued over the inclusion of the preceding example. One of us wanted to delete the previous subsection because the example seemed too "slick" for the point being made. Finally, we decided to keep the point but to test it against a more mundane example, one that many of us have been taught in secondary school-the quadratic formula. Does our problem generation "prior effect" point still hold? Here goes:

Suppose you have the equation $a x^{2}+b x+c=0$ and want to derive the "quadratic formula," where $x$ is a variable, and $a, b$, and $c$ are constants.

We know how to solve some quadratics by factoring, but not all. How can we proceed? We know that when we solve linear equations, we isolate variables on one side and the constants on the other. So let us write:

$$
\text { (i) } a x^{2}+b x=-c
$$

It is a start that, by the way, requires no new question asking for most people. Now what? Anyone seeing this problem for the first time, and who has some background and wants to solve it, might proceed by observing, "I know how to solve linear equations, some quadratics by factoring and even some equations of higher degree" (each of which you know how to solve) like:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { (ii) } d \cdot y+e=f \\
y^{2}=k \\
(g y+h) \cdot(p y+q)=0 \\
y^{\mathrm{n}}=m
\end{gathered}
$$

where $y$ is a variable and the other letters are constants. A natural inclination would be to ask: "How can I view (i) so that it is like something in (ii)?"

Pursuing this heuristic does lead to a solution (one that involves a technique called "completing the square"). But a shift of focus away from the familiar leads to something as dramatic as our approach to the fly/train problem.

We illustrate this approach by selecting a special case of the quadratic equation.
Consider:

$$
x^{2}+x-1=0
$$

Let us challenge rather than accept some well-entrenched method of solving equations. We are searching for an alternative to completing the square, as well as to collecting unknowns on the same side of the equation. Thus we employ a "What-If-Not" approach on a universally accepted procedure that is frequently unquestioned.
(1) Let us start by splitting up the $x$ 's:

$$
x^{2}-1=-x
$$

(2) Then $(x+1) \cdot(x-1)=-x$ by factoring,
(3) Then

$$
x-1=\frac{-x}{x+1}
$$

by division,
(4)

$$
x=1-\frac{x}{1+x}=\frac{1+x-x}{1+x}=\frac{1}{1+x}
$$

Well, we have what we asked for. We split up the $x$ 's in step (1)-an unconventional approach-but we have not gotten anywhere because they are still split in step (4):

$$
x=\frac{1}{1+x}
$$

Nevertheless, continue by replacing the $x$ on the right-hand side by

$$
\frac{1}{1+x}
$$

since

$$
x=\frac{1}{1+x} .
$$

Thus, $\frac{1}{1+x}$ transforms to $\frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{1+x}}$
But don't stop here; replace $x$ again by $\frac{1}{1+x}$

$$
x=\frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{1+x}}}
$$

What would you estimate the expression on the right to be? How would you calculate it? Compare it to what you get when you use the quadratic formula in this special case. ${ }^{3}$ As an aside you might find it enlightening to also compare what you are finding out here with what you explored in the first example of chapter 5-the Fibonacci sequence. ${ }^{4}$

Our apologies for teasing you in this last example! We obviously did not apply the well-known equation-solving strategies here. Quite the contrary, we solved this problem by violating one of the most fundamental rules of equation solving: We do not split up the unknowns on both sides of the equation. Of course this all was a digression from the main point of indicating how problem generation is a necessary condition for problem solving. It was a useful digression, however, for we have once more been able to show the power of "What-If-Not" thinking. We negated the attribute that says, "The solution of equations in general requires that we collect all of the unknowns on one side and the constants on the other."

This digression, although not the main point, is not so far from the mark of this reflection section, however. For now that you realize (or are coming to realize) that you can solve this quadratic equation with this method, you probably are stimulated to ask a number of new questions, such as, "What's so special about

[^50]$$
\frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{1}}, \frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{1+1}}
$$

[^51]using the splitting unknowns procedure on this particular quadratic? Can we use it on others? on all?"

But that takes us right back to the first portion of this reflection section, to the "after effect," in which we discussed how it is that we did not appreciate our solution to a problem until we had begun to ask and analyze a new why question that went beyond the desire to calculate the original answer.

## SUMMARY

In earlier chapters of this book, we first argued for the value of problem generation apart from its intimate and immediate relationship to problem solving. In addition, we have suggested specific strategies for such activity. In this chapter, however, we have been less concerned with specific strategies for problem posing and more interested in exhibiting a strong connection between problem posing and problem solving. We have shown not only that problem solving may lead to problem posing, but that frequently we do not appreciate the significance of an alleged solution without generating and analyzing further problems or questions. Second, we have claimed that the act of problem solving often requires some reformulation of the original problem that is essentially a problem-generating activity.

Although the focus has been less explicitly on discovering the significance of an alleged solution, there has been some interesting empirical research in mathematics education in recent years on the two aspects of problem posing that we have highlighted in this chapter. That is, in relating problem posing to solving, researchers have investigated the nature, intensity, and intention of problem posing that takes place at various stages of problem solving-before, during, and after the activity of trying to solve a problem. Furthermore, there was some effort to determine the extent to which problem generation was done in a systematic manner such that it could be hypothesized that subjects were operating from the perspective of some cognitive commitment. Here is an excerpt from an abstract of one such research paper by Silver et al. that investigated problem posing by middle school and prospective secondary school teachers. ${ }^{5}$
[Teachers] worked either individually or in pairs to pose mathematical problems associated with a reasonably complex task setting, before and during or after attempting to solve a problem within that task setting. Written responses were examined to determine the kinds of problems posed in this task setting, to make inferences about cognitive processes used to generate the problems, and to examine differences between problems posed prior to solving the problem and those posed during or after solving. Although some responses were ill-posed or poorly stated

[^52]problems, subjects generated a large number of reasonable problems during both problem-posing phases, thereby suggesting that these teachers and prospective teachers had some personal capacity for mathematical problem posing. ... A sizable portion of the posed problems were produced in clusters of related problems, thereby suggesting systematic problem generation. Subjects posed more problems before problem solving than during or after problem solving, and they tended to shift the focus of their posing between posing phases based at least in part on the intervening problem-solving experience. Moreover, the posed problems were not always ones that subjects could solve, nor were they always problems with "nice" mathematical solutions. (p. 293)

This research is valuable from many points of view. It does draw on the sorts of relationships between problem posing and solving that we have depicted in this chapter. At the close of chapter 8, however, we offer what may be an alternative paradigm for thinking about problem posing as an educational program.

## 7

## Writing for Journals of Editorial Boards: Student as Author and Critic

How might a college or university instructor, a teacher educator, or a classroom teacher organize a course that makes use of the problem-generating ideas we have developed in this book? ${ }^{\text {I }}$ There are certainly many possibilities, but we would like to suggest the bare outline of a scheme we developed over a period of several years. The central concept is that of student as author and as editorial board member. Placing the student in such a role is a radical notion because it assumes a kind of expertise normally reserved for researchers or educators and not for their students. Such a reversal of role, however, is consistent with our fundamental notion that students ought to participate actively in their own education and not be mere recipients of knowledge.

In addition to the dominant scheme, which we depict as writing for journals in the context of editorial boards, we will be exploring an additional model-that of a secular Talmud-which is actually a modification of the journal/editorial board scheme. Although it has been implemented several times, it is in early stages of development and we present it in a sketchy format. We invite all readers who try out and modify further either of these schemes to contact us to let us know how they work out.

[^53]As will become apparent as you view descriptions of some of the articles produced by the students for journals, very little in the way of technical knowledge was required, although it was assumed that the students had acquired an appreciation for the nature of mathematical thinking.

Communication has become one of the central themes developed in the "Standards" and elsewhere. As such, journal keeping is included as an important element in many recent documents. ${ }^{2}$ Although these documents focus on the keeping of personal journals as a valuable way of recording and sharing emerging understanding of ideas, the scheme we have in mind is somewhat different. As will become apparent when the story in this chapter unfolds, our scheme involves communication, negotiation, persuasion, and evaluation by students in a manner that is not usually part of the experience of keeping a personal journal. Though the models we will advocate appeal in a full-scale manner to these writing qualities, there have been some authors-at a variety of educational levels-who, in recent years, have created schemes that explore some elements of these models. ${ }^{3}$

## COURSE DESCRIPTION

As a start, we reproduce a catalogue description of our course:

## Generating and Solving Problems in Mathematics


#### Abstract

The main purpose of this course is to provide a context which will counteract an approach to mathematics which is characterized by clear organization of content, clearly posed problems, logical development of definitions, theorems, proofs. We intend instead to provide students with some feeling for mathematics-in-the-making. We will engage in and explore techniques for generating problems, solving problems, providing structure for a mass of disorganized data, reflecting on the processes used in the above activities, analyzing moments of insight, analyzing "abortive" attempts.


The main structural feature of the course, which provides a focus for other activities, is the creation of several journals-which are essentially collections of articles written and edited by groups of students throughout the semester. By the end of the semester, each small group produces a final version which is shared with all members of the class.

[^54]To create the journal, the class is divided into several editorial boards (usually with three to five members on a board). Throughout the semester students write papers, which they submit to boards other than their own. Each board offers written criticism to authors and passes judgment on the papers submitted. The boards decide to accept, reject, or require revisions of student papers. After they have had some practice in constructively criticizing papers, each board begins to establish a policy indicating what kind of material and what writing style it most admires. Once a policy is established, each board publicizes it so that students can decide to submit to a board that is most sympathetic with their point of view.

Sources for journal articles include:

1. Problems or situations arising out of class discussions.
2. Problems or situations suggested by instructors every so often.
3. Articles on problems appearing in professional journals.

The papers can be a student's first attempt at defining, analyzing, or solving a problem. The students can also extend, solve, analyze, or criticize one of the topics previously dealt with in the course. We stress that if a problem is selected as a starting point it is not necessary that it be solved. Papers include discussions of false starts, introspection on insights or misconceptions, and a list of related topics and specific problems generated while solving the original problem.

Not only are attempts (even unsuccessful ones) to solve problems valued, but other activities not strictly related to solutions at all are considered worthwhile. On some occasions, for example, students decide to write about their efforts to understand the significance of a problem. Others even decide to write about what they imagine the history of the problem might have been. Still others choose to focus on problem posing in a way that may be very loosely connected to problem solving. Some even choose to analyze the dynamics of our classroom itself as a problem posing/solving situation.

Besides the articles themselves, the journals produced by the editorial boards include:

- Each editorial board's policy.
- An abstract for each accepted article.
- Letters of acceptance (or required revisions) sent to the author. Sometimes the original draft, a letter requiring revision, and the final draft all appear in the journal. They indicate the kind of reflection encouraged among students.
- A list of interesting problems that come up in class or in small group or editorial board discussions.
- A list of books or articles either related to specific problems that have been explored or that provide general background for topics or articles.

As the boards define their policy, they broaden their role from that of merely receiving papers to actually soliciting those that reflect their emerging policy. Some boards have requested criticism and evaluation of the course; others have called for additional problem posing strategies beyond those discussed in class; still others have run contests for the most interesting pedagogical or mathematical problem students have experienced.

## ORGANIZATION OF THE COURSE

## Phase 1: Group Interaction and Note Taking

The style and content of the course change as the term progresses. In the first phase of the course the instructor usually selects topics that are rich as a potential source for solving problems. Although some problem posing is encouraged, the primary focus at the beginning of this phase is on solving problems individually, in small groups, and in a large group discussion.

In order to enable students to become aware of different approaches to problem solving among their peers, we occasionally pair students and have them observe each other's effort at working on a problem. They take notes on strategies used and we discuss the different styles exhibited. At this stage, we attempt to maintain a descriptive rather than a judgmental tone, for we are not so much trying to evaluate how students approach problems, as we are hoping to make people sensitive to what they actually do. If it does not appear to interfere unduly with their activity, students (especially when they are paired up to listen to each other) think out loud during problem solving in order to aid in a diagnosis of their style of approach. In order to gain a clearer picture of the problem-solving strategy used, it is helpful at this stage to give the students problems that require a minimal amount of technical knowledge and that require some manipulation of actual materials rather than pencil and paper alone. The geoboard is a good source of problems for this purpose; so are problems involving objects like toothpicks and discs. The famous Tower of Hanoi puzzle (moving discs of different diameters from one spindle to another according to certain rules) is a good one to use. So are ones like the cherry-in-the-glass problem as described here:

Four toothpicks enclose a cherry. What is the minimum number of picks you can move so that the cherry is outside the "glass"?


At this stage, students look back at the notes they have taken, and discuss with the entire class what they have found out. They do not yet write articles for editorial boards.

## Phase 2: Beginning Writing for Editorial Boards

After students have begun to be familiar with different approaches to problem solving with their peers, we introduce some readings that (a) describe heuristics of problem solving, (b) distinguish styles of thinking and problem solving, and (c) suggest "blocks" to the activity as well. We continue to assign readings throughout the rest of the course, but neither in this phase nor in later ones do we have a preestablished set of readings. Although the three categories just described are usually represented, selections are made based on the interest and mood of the students. Many of the readings are selected from the bibliography of this text.

Among "classics" that we have found useful for such exploration are those by Adams (on blocks to problem solving), Polya (on heuristics for problem solving), and Ewing (on styles of problem solving). We should stress, however, that these are all popular categories in mathematics education and in psychology as well, and in addition to these references (listed in the bibliography), there is a growing body of literature that is both expanding and refining issues in each of these areas. Anyone teaching a course of this sort would most likely receive considerable help by reviewing recent issues of professional journals in mathematics education and psychology, by visiting the "Standards" documents produced by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, by consulting with colleagues from related fields as well as by exploring the internet.

Gradually, we begin to encourage students to pose problems based on the ones they have attempted to solve, but at this stage no explicit problem-generating strategies are discussed. At this stage, too, we encourage students to record their attempted solutions, insights, and newly generated problems, and to discuss them in class. After about three or four class sessions, we encourage students to state explicitly some of the problem-posing techniques they have used implicitly in the first phase of the course. At this stage we begin to formalize some of the strategies we have developed in chapters 3 and 4 of the text. During this second stage, students begin the writing for journal activity. We introduce them to new problems as potential starting points for their articles, and also encourage them to return to the problems they worked on during the first phase - this time armed with some explicit strategies for generating new problems from what was perceived to be "milked dry."

Among the criteria we have used to select mathematical topics for the first two phases of the course are the following:

1. All students most likely have enough familiarity to understand what is being asked in the problem. Some might make use of special cases and diagrams; others might deal more abstractly with the topic.
2. Topics should lend themselves to examination from a number of different perspectives (e.g., algebraic, geometric, number theoretic points of view).
3. Although innocent looking on the surface, topics should have unsuspected depth.
4. Problems should be such that students can be enticed by easily suggested "situations" that require a relatively small amount of formal definition.

What satisfies the criteria just listed depends on the background and sophistication of the students. One could select from an endless number of topics or situations that would both meet the criteria and satisfy the appetites of students ranging from those in elementary school to those doing doctoral work. Many of the topics discussed earlier in this book have made excellent points of departure for journal writing.

At some point toward the end of this phase, we form the editorial boards. They may not at this point have articulated a board policy, but after they have made decisions about how to respond to the first round of submitted papers, and after they have reflected on their implicit criteria, they are in a position to state their board policy at least tentatively. It is important to give the students an opportunity to discuss what they would like to consider in helping to compose their editorial boards. Do they want the boards to reflect diversity in subject matter interest? In grade levels they may be teaching? In mathematical versus pedagogical focus? We do leave the opportunity open for reconstituting boards once they are formed, but this is a delicate matter, and we do so with reluctance and caution in order not to offend either boards or individuals when reformulation takes place. Such reformulation of course is considerably less threatening than "reality TV" in which (for example) one publicly decides which potential mates will be dropped and why.

## Phase 3: Writing for Journals in Full Bloom

Once students begin to feel comfortable writing articles and receiving criticism from their peers (usually after the first round) we move into the third phase of the course, in which we select content based on specific interests of editorial boards and students. In order to help orient them to the kinds of topics they might consider, especially with regard to problem posing, it is helpful to assign essays from our book of readings that we mentioned in chapter $1 .{ }^{4}$ We encourage them to collaborate not only in their thinking about problems but in their writing as well. We also have them begin to reflect (in their articles) on their idiosyncratic styles of thinking.

Once the editorial boards are formed, however, we are cautious about the composition of writing teams. That is, we want to avoid the prospect of having

[^55]editorial boards evaluate papers that have their own members as authors (reminiscent of the famous Groucho Marx line, "I would never join a group that would accept me as a member").

The following is a typical group writing assignment:

Choose a question or observation related to Pythagorean triples and work on it in a small group for a while. For next week each member of the group should focus (in three pages or so) on a different question of the sort indicated below:

1. What did your group find out mathematically?
2. What were some of the problem solving strategies that were used?
3. What things that you tried as a group were abortive?
4. How does the group problem solving strategy in this case compare with your problem solving strategies in others?
5. What other problems came up or were created when you worked in this group?
6. What were your emotional reactions? What turned you on? Off?
7. What were the different roles played by people in the group?
8. Other?

We encourage students to reflect on how their styles of thinking affect their ability to work in collaboration with others, and also to see how they perform as a function of who initiates the task they work on. Thus, we encourage students to work at least once in each of the following four conditions, and to reflect in writing (for at least one paper) on the difference in their performance under these varying circumstances.


Once the students have reached this phase of the course, they are prepared to put into action some of the board-initiated activity we described earlier (such as a call for papers on topics of their own choosing, and refining their earlier editorial board policy).

## A WORD OF CAUTION

It is worth stressing that, despite an air of excitement and commitment, we sometimes reach a point of discomfort (usually about one-third of the way through the course or just prior to the requirement that an article be submitted to editorial boards, whichever occurs first) among several of our students. Some students are very concerned about submitting a paper to be evaluated by an editorial board comprised of peers-in light of the fact that abortive as well as valuable efforts are disclosed, and in which no final solution of a problem is necessarily expected.

Some students are especially concerned about "airing their dirty linen" in public, especially if they have an image of mathematics as "polished" and "impersonal." We have found it to be both essential and valuable to allow students' discontent to surface and especially to encourage discussion among class members over the issues involved. We have found it worthwhile to encourage students to submit an article to one of the editorial boards in which they try to express these emotional issues. The experience of the course is a threatening one, in part because students' prior mathematical experience has taught them to operate in a relatively dispassionate and receptive mode, and to do so noncollaboratively. ${ }^{5}$

It will be necessary, therefore, for teachers who wish to adopt this model to consider different methods of easing students into the role of author and critic. The manner and degree of acclimatization will depend on such factors as age, intellectual sophistication, and ability of students to handle peer criticism.

It is important for instructors of such a course to find ways of allaying some of the aforementioned fears that students may have in order to pave the way for significant growth. In order to encourage them to take the kinds of risk we have described, we have found it helpful to assume a grading policy that offers a number of different opportunities to display their many talents. The following is an excerpt of a memo of ours from one of our courses on teaching problem posing/solving to graduate students in mathematics education.

## Grading

Since we want to encourage you to (1) reflect upon your abortive as well as successful efforts in thinking about problems, (2) express your feelings (in writing and orally) about your work on activities associated with the course and (3) accept in a

[^56]non-threatened way the evaluation of your colleagues, it would be unusual indeed for students who attend the class regularly and who participate in good faith with the class requirements to receive a grade that is not satisfactory.

There will be no examinations or traditional type term papers submitted at the end of the semester. The grade for each student will depend upon:

1. participation in class discussions and group work
2. participation as a member of an editorial board (judged both by the process of producing a journal and by the final product)
3. the quality of the articles produced for the editorial boards

While the instructors will determine that portion of the grade associated with (1) and (2) above, there will be heavy reliance upon the judgment of fellow editorial board members for (3). A student who has pursued the writing of journal papers seriously but has not had a stellar reception by the boards might still receive a good grade based upon performance in the other activities in the course. In addition, though the instructors do not wish to compete with the editorial board judgments during the course of the semester, they will be happy to render independent judgment on the quality of your submitted papers at the end of the semester should you feel that you have not received a fair hearing by your peers.

Regardless of its relationship to grading, however, the role of critic is difficult for many students to assume without first discussing the matter explicitly. Students may wish to discuss both the value (and potential pitfalls as well) of criticizing the work of peers, and potential criteria to be used in constructive criticism. ${ }^{6}$ With some encouragement, we find that most students find good reasons for either replacing or supplementing the critical, judgmental, and helpful role normally assumed by the teacher. They come to appreciate that their colleagues may have a refreshingly open and sympathetic reaction to their efforts in approaching new and somewhat risky tasks. In addition, they frequently see their role of critic as one that has considerable potential to be turned "inward" for the purpose of improving their own writing as well.

Once they are persuaded of the value of peer criticism, the editorial boards may need help in coming up with an interesting and coherent editorial board policy. Towards this end, we have found it helpful to have discussions that center on the creation of relevant categories even before positive or negative valences are placed on them. An example of such a category might be "style of exposition." Some boards will eventually select those papers that appear to be tightly argued in a way that may resemble familiar expositions. Others will prize papers that are more chatty in tone. Other "neutral" categories that students have found helpful for the

[^57]purpose of beginning to think about the nature of their criticism are: relationship of problem posing to problem solving; creation of new territory versus reflection upon mathe- matical ideas with which the student has been familiar for a while; "heaviness of tone" (including, for example, the place of humor desired in the paper); degree of succinctness. There are many others that instructors and students will come up with in conversations over several weeks, but the important point we wish to stress is that it is helpful to discuss at early stages categories that appear relevant but at the same time are not "preachy" or value laden.

Instructors who use this scheme will have to adapt and modify it so that it is appropriate for their particular class as well as their own style of teaching. In fact, we urge teachers who want to make use of our editorial board strategy to do a "What-IfNot" on the scheme itself-depending on the specific circumstances of the students they teach, as well as their particular goals for teaching. We encourage teachers who are using our approach to adopt such an attitude, despite the sense of insecurity that may accompany it, for we believe not only that problem posing and problem solving are important activities for mathematics students, but that the teaching act itself ought to be viewed in a problematic way. In fact, we fear that despite a new interest in problem solving in the mathematics curriculum, many educators will try erroneously to persuade teachers that a particular package or program will guarantee success. We believe that teaching anything ought to be viewed as problematic, and this implies that no topic (especially not problem posing and problem solving) and no teaching approach should be viewed as something to be "bought" on someone else's say-so. In fact, we believe that all of us ought to be plagued regularly by questions like:

- Why is problem solving being advocated so strongly as a national curriculum theme?
- Why should it be taught?
- How does problem solving fit in with other things that are important to learn?
- What are the ways in which it makes sense to incorporate problem posing within a problem-solving agenda (and in what ways might it be disengaged from that agenda)?

An advantage of adopting a problematic and "What-If-Not" attitude toward our proposed scheme is that it may become accessible not only to mathematics teachers who wish to focus on areas other than problem posing, but to teachers of other disciplines as well.

## "SNIPPETS" OF JOURNAL MATERIALS

Keeping in mind the disclaimer on adapting a program based on the authority of others, it might be helpful to see some actual examples of material produced by our
students for the journal. The following are illustrations of editorial policy, letters to authors of articles, typical tables of contents for a complete journal, and excerpts from "published" articles.

## Editorial Board Policy Statements

In order to gain some feeling for the diversity of editorial policies developed by students, we reproduce the following two statements from the journals entitled Looking Inside a Problem and Converging Corners, Diverging Directions.

## I. Looking Inside a Problem

Contents: The board will accept articles on any topic that is interesting for the class and brings forth personal contributions. We would particularly like to receive articles that express your own thinking and feelings.
Form: In order to be published, the article must be clear, interestingly and well written. There is no restriction on length.
Revisions: Revisions will be concerned with the form of the article. We will only suggest modifications in the content:
-when the writer has added something new to an argument already produced in class that would be worth adding to the article
-if there is an overlap between two articles which we would like to accept; we may ask one of the two to re-write his/her article. We feel this will avoid too much repetition.
We will be happy to discuss any of the suggested revisions if you feel it is necessary. We would like, in some cases, to have the right to summarize a collection of articles on a similar topic rather than publishing each of them independently.

## II. Converging Corners, Diverging Directions

Our board is looking more for papers with some insight into the thinking process than for original solutions and problems. We do appreciate successful solutions and unusual problems in topics like number theory or geometry; however, we would prefer a paper that did not find a clear "answer" but was rich in discussion of the problem-solving and problem-posing styles. This is preferred to a straightforward proof.

We are looking for papers that deal with issues such as style of problem solving, abortive efforts, how you were able to make certain insights, and other problems you generated. We add to this some related questions. Do you see points in your paper
where you could have used another method? Why did you choose the method you did? How did the wording of the question affect your style? How can your solution be applied to real-life situations in or out of the classroom? How can your insights to your problem-solving and problem-posing style be applied? We could go on indefinitely.

We urge you to keep your scratch work and to be constantly aware of your thought pattern. Observe yourself while you are working. Ask yourself why you decided to do what you are doing. In math courses, we are trained to include only the "correct" answer. Please analyze and include some of your mistakes or deadend ideas. There are several reasons for this. Is it an error that you make repeatedly? Were you quick to recognize an error or did you make a series of assumptions based on your mistake? Maybe it wasn't really an error or a dead-end. Someone else might pick it up.

We will not automatically exclude any paper that does not deal directly with aspects we have brought up. We will consider each submitted paper on its own merits. Our policies are not exclusive.

## Letters to Authors From Editorial Boards

Not only do we encourage editorial boards to indicate in writing why they decide to require modifications of submitted articles or reject them, but we also have them provide reasons for acceptance. The following are two letters of acceptance-both with requests for minor revisions:

Dear Ms. B,
After careful consideration, we are pleased to inform you of our decision to accept your paper for publication. We hope you will continue to submit your papers to our journal in the future.

The points of your article that convinced us to accept your work are your narrative style and your inclusion of the various attempts in solving the problem. The strongest point, we feel, is the paragraphs on similarities and differences of your and Mr. R's approach to the problem, including your comments on pressure and time restrictions.

We would like to suggest a few slight revisions before publication. Please clarify the listings on the last page, possibly combining \#3 and \#6 into the same statement and especially your statement $\# 5$ which we feel is difficult to understand. Also, on page two, please reword the first sentence and place the diagram apart from the narrative.

Again, we congratulate you on this fine article.
Sincerely,
Jay Cubed Enterprise

Dear Miss J,
We are writing this letter to congratulate you on the acceptance of your paper, "Observations on the Fly-Train Problem," in our most distinguished journal. The fine qualities of the paper, such as your own personal touches, your conversational style of writing, and the contrast between your approach and that of your partner, all add to the excellence of your paper.

There are several ideas we thought you may want to revise or add to....In your paper, you discussed different approaches to problem solving. You mentioned particularly the abstract approach of the problem solver, in contrast to your own pencil and paper approach. We would be interested in finding out why you feel that the abstract approach is more beneficial to a problem solver.

Do you believe it is always better? If so, can we develop or teach thinking in the abstract?

These are just a few questions you may want to deal with in your next paper.
With Curiosity,
NARC

## Typical Tables of Contents

Here are two tables of contents. Notice that the first entry of the first journal includes both the original submission and the one revised based on criticism made by the board. Notice also that some of the articles reflect on the problem-posing and problem-solving processes themselves. In each case, board members have prepared brief "blurbs" for accepted articles.

Some of these topics may appear to be somewhat cryptic out of context, but it should be possible to gain an overall flavor for the kinds of topics that were explored and the kind of spirit engendered in the students' writing as you peruse the following annotated tables of contents. It is of course necessary to appreciate that each group of students puts its own distinctive mark on the content and style of the journal.

## 1. Table of Contents of Board $\pi$

## GEOBOARD INSPIRED

Squares on the Geoboard, Mr. W

- Original paper: How many different squares are there on an $\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}$ geoboard?
- Critique by Mr. $\mathrm{J}_{1}$
- Revision of the original

Back to the Geoboard, Mr. $\mathrm{R}_{1}$
Counting all possible squares on an $\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}$ geoboard.
The Orchard Problem, Mr. $\mathrm{A}_{1}$, Mr. $\mathrm{A}_{2}$, Ms. $\mathrm{C}_{2}, \mathrm{Mr} . \mathrm{W}_{1}$
How can we tell if a particular tree is see-able in an infinite orchard?
Circles on the Geoboard, Ms. $\mathrm{K}_{2}$
How many nails are on or inside the largest circle that fits within the geoboard? Relationships of the form $\mathrm{a}^{2}+\mathrm{b}^{2}=\mathrm{c}^{2}+\mathrm{k}$ are investigated and some surprising relationships are found.

The Rainy Day Seedlings Problem, Ms. C
An approximation of $\pi$ via the geoboard.
Envelopes of Lines on the Geoboard, Mr. $\mathrm{R}_{1}$
Constructing envelopes on the geoboard.

## An Area Problem, Ms. $\mathrm{K}_{2}$

Determining the area of a diamond figure that does not have a peg at each vertex on a $5 \times 5$ geoboard.

## MATHEMATICAL GAMES

Lucks and Bagels, Mr. $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ Mathematics in disguise.

## CIRCLES AND QUADRILATERALS

Quadrilaterals Tangent to Two Circles, Mr. $\mathrm{C}_{2}$
What is the smallest and largest quadrilateral in which two tangent circles can be inscribed?

## Geometry and Calculus Recalled, Mr. $\mathrm{F}_{1}$

An excursion abounding with errors and incompletion which might be the basis for critical analysis.

## MOTIONS IN THE PLANE

Tessellations, Mr. $\mathrm{R}_{\mathbf{1}}$
Any quadrilateral tessellates the plane.
Chocolate Chip Geometry, Mr. $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ and Ms. $\mathrm{W}_{1}$
Rotating the plane about particular points.
Translations, Rotations, and Flips in the Plane, Ms. C and Ms. W
Exploring rigid motions of a figure in the plane.
Messing Around with Math, Ms. A ${ }_{1}$
Motions through matrices.

## MIN-MAX TOPICS

The Bridge Problem, Ms. $\mathrm{A}_{2}$
The use of paper folding in finding minimum paths.
Points, Lines, and Distances, Ms. $\mathrm{W}_{2}$
Explores minimum paths between points and lines.
Reflections on Polygons, Ms. $\mathrm{C}_{1}$
Shortest paths within a polygon.

## POLYGONS

Shortest Paths and Shortest Paths in 3-Dimensions, Mr. S ${ }_{1}$ Ms. C, Ms. W 2 An analysis of shortest paths through reflections.

Construction of Polygons, Given the Midpoints of the Sides, Ms. $\mathrm{A}_{2}, \mathrm{Ms} . \mathrm{A}_{1}, \mathrm{Ms} . \mathrm{W}_{2}$ Polygon construction.

Points In and around Polygons, Mr. W
The sum of the distances from a point in the interior of an equilateral triangle to its side is a constant.

## OTHER TOPICS

An Application of "What-If-Not" in Problem Solving, Ms. $\mathrm{A}_{2}$
Exploring the construction of squares on the sides of a quadrilateral and connecting the centers of opposite squares.

Some Observations on Multiplication Tables, Ms. $\mathrm{L}_{1}$
"Mod"ifying multiplication.
Are the Field Axioms Independent?, Mr. $\mathrm{W}_{2}$
The formula $\mathrm{a}+\mathrm{b}=\mathrm{b}+\mathrm{a}$ is proved from the other field axioms.
A Curriculum Unit on Prime Numbers, Ms. $\mathrm{W}_{1}$
A teaching unit on prime numbers.

## 2. Table of Contents of Board X

Butterfly Problem, by Ms. $\mathrm{M}_{1}$
One cannot but help to be intrigued by the development of Ms. $\mathbf{M}_{1}$ 's problem. One gets a good insight into her thought processes concerning the solution of this very difficult problem of geometry.

Butterfly Problem Re-visited, by Mr. O
Letter to Mr. O, from Board.
A well organized description of several methods used in attacking the butterfly problem. These same methods can be applied to a large number of difficult geometry problems.

A Generating Formula for Integral Solutions to $\mathrm{a}^{2}+\mathrm{b}^{2}=\mathrm{c}^{2}$, by $\mathrm{Mr} . \mathrm{G}_{\mathbf{1}}$
This paper gives a well motivated discussion on a formula for primitive Pythagorean triples. The writer takes you step-by-step through his discovery of the result. The reader will especially enjoy the clarity as well as the content.

Some Random Notes on Pythagorean Numbers, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{2}$
Letter to $\mathrm{Mr} . \mathrm{G}_{2}$
Although this paper is entitled "Some Random Notes on Pythagorean Numbers," one finds very many deep number theoretic results in it. This is a must paper for those interested in number theory.

Untitled, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{3}$
Letter to Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{3}$.
Many problems are deeply related to each other. Here is an exposition relating fractional solutions of the Pythagorean Formula to the circle. You will also notice the dependence of each topic on Pythagorean Numbers.

On the Quadratic Triplets, by Ms. $\mathrm{H}_{3}$
Letter to Mr. $\mathbf{H}_{3}$ from Board.
An empirical approach has revealed several conjectures about rational solutions of the Pythagorean Formula. Some are quite surprising, and you may enjoy investigating them further.

Some Interesting Problems, Books and Articles.
Untitled, by Ms. $\mathrm{M}_{1}$
The reader is given the pieces used in transforming a parallelogram into a square and shown how these pieces are used in a proof of the Pythagorean theorem.

Variations on a Theme by Pythagoras, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{1}$
This paper looks at three twists on the old theme. Integer-sided $60^{\circ}$ triangles, integer points on the ellipse, and the imperfect Pythagorean triplets generated by relations of the form $a^{2}+b^{2}=c^{2}+k$ are investigated and some surprising relationships are found.

Minimum Path Problems, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{1}$
Can we find a method which will help us to find the minimum path inside any polygon?

What If Not "What-If-Not", by Ms. $\mathrm{H}_{3}$
A critical analysis and discussion of the "What-If-Not" approach to problem posing.

The Golden Section, by Mr. $\mathrm{H}_{1}$
Showing a method of building a golden section segment using tangent and secant to a circle. The second part of the paper, showing extension to any segment, is needlessly involved. A much more direct method exists.

Circular Reasoning, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{2}$
A general problem with tangent circles involves some rather fancy reasoning, but a few of the specific cases are solvable with very elementary high-school geometry and a brief algebraic manipulation. One is solvable with little more than a clever elementary school trick.

Matrices \& Transformations: The Problem of Undoing, by Mr. $\mathrm{G}_{1}, \mathrm{Ms} . \mathrm{H}_{3}, \mathrm{Ms}$. $\mathrm{M}_{2}, \mathrm{Mr} . \mathrm{M}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Mr} . \mathrm{G}_{2}$

Linear transformations have geometric interpretations, and can also be related to the algebra of matrices. This paper describes those relationships.

A collection of interesting problems that have come up in class, by the editorial board of Journal.

## Excerpts From "Published" Articles

The following are some brief excerpts from articles published in the class journals, which convey something not only of the mathematical investigation, but of the personal reflective spirit that some students were able to capture in the course-an introspective stance that was difficult for many students to express. We end the collection with an editorial that is not only reflective but self-serving (from our point of view). Perhaps it will counterbalance some of our words of caution and will inspire others to venture into a course of this type.

Working in the full class group Tuesday I found to be frustrating. My mind seemed to be reacting slowly to the suggestions and I felt that I wanted to follow through on some of the conjectures but my train of thought was constantly being interrupted. Obviously some stimulation was being generated since the thought that $3^{2}-\mathbf{1}^{2}=8$ came to me later as I was driving. In contrast on Wednesday in the small group, I found myself leaping from one line of reasoning to another without feeling frustrated. Was this due to the smallness of the group? Was it because the conjectures of the group were less diverse? Was it because I had an incubation period for the problem? Was it because I felt responsibility for seeing that the group was productive? Whatever the reason, the ideas seemed to come more readily in the small group than in the large class setting and my mind seemed more able to respond to the stimulus of suggestions from other members of the group. Might the key lie in a genetic or conditioned learning strategy? Perhaps I naturally prefer convergent thinking (successive scanning) and also tend toward reflective rather than impulsive responses in problem solving.

## A New Way to Look at a Circle, Ms. $B_{2}$

The following is an extension of my "What-If-Not" paper on the equation $\mathrm{x}^{2}+\mathrm{y}^{2}=25$. I asked myself the question, What-If-Not this equation were graphed on regular coordinate axes? After having initially found some surprising discoveries, I become really interested in this and investigated further. What evolved, it seems to me, is the seed of a unit not only on graphing, but on circles and ellipses ... and perhaps with a little more imagination one might be able to incorporate parabolas and hyperbolas too. I'll explain this aspect of the paper further after you have been exposed to some of my ideas.

## What If Not "What-If-Not"?, Ms. $H_{l}$

The "What-If-Not" approach to mathematical situations is intriguing ... mostly because it is not clear whether it is really rich or fake rich. In this paper, I am not sure whether I am criticizing, asking for better definitions or talking about other possible use. I am probably doing all three.

The stated objectives of the approach are to (1) encourage teachers and students to pose new questions about mathematical phenomena and (2) provide a model or technique for posing new questions. Hopefully this will lead to new curriculum ideas. Many of my questions crystallized as I tried to apply the What-If-Not technique to generate curriculum ideas for a 10th grade geometry class. I am using that attempt to illustrate the questions ... .

## Under Observation, Mr. $M_{I}$

In our last session, I elected to be one of the observed. I felt pressure to produce while being observed and hence to alleviate some pressure I tried making myself comfortable.

Initially the squaring problem looked routine, however, it did not prove to be routine and simple. After the session, I noted the following as my strategies for solving the problem:

1. Obvious answer. If the answer was obvious, it could be seen quickly (insight required). I had NO LUCK.
2. Trial and error. Make intelligent guesses and test solutions. NO LUCK again.
3. Bulldozer method. Since answer was not obvious, search for a pattern by bulldozing out more numbers and discover a generator. NO LUCK.
4. Normal approach. Look for a generalization by algebraic representation. NO LUCK.

Later when I worked further on the problem, I noted the following strategies:
5. What cannot work? Are there numbers that cannot work? Why?
6. A re-look through algebra and a formalized approach (insight).
7. Search for a pattern among selected components, i.e., break problem up into smaller parts that may be related (insight).
8. Formalize any observations and patterns.

## Editorial, Ms. $H_{5}$ of the Phantom Board

This course has made me more aware of the value of trial and error. Since I have been so conditioned to proving and disproving abstract concepts, I almost forgot the interesting questions and conjectures that can come out of trial and error. Examining many aspects of a problem has enabled me to have more insight into simple problems.

Working with the Pythagorean triples has given me information that I have already used in my senior classes. Enriching ideas or comments add to the interest of a course.

I have always been aware of the versatility of math, but now I stress this idea more in my classes.

I have also observed in my classes that most average high school students rely heavily on the teacher as the main source of information. If they have confidence in your mathematical ability, they believe almost every concept presented to them by you. I would assume that in advanced classes, the students would challenge the teacher more.

This course has been the most interesting and informative math education course that I have enrolled in here. This is the sixth math education course I've taken (two in
undergraduate school and three in graduate school) and the first that has challenged me and forced me to think about my role as an educator.

## SOME "MOORE" REFLECTIONS ON THE EDITORIAL BOARD SCHEME

Deborah Moore-Russo joined the faculty of the Graduate School of Education at the University at Buffalo in 2003, and she decided to teach a problem solving/posing course in her first semester. Since she chose to make use of the editorial board scheme, we thought readers who might be thinking about adopting this scheme for the first time would be particularly interested in some of her criticisms, modifications, and innovations. Professer Moore-Russo was formerly an Associate Professor in the mathematics department at the University of Puerto Rico at Mayagüez, and associate dean for research and academic affairs for the College of Arts and Sciences. Here are excerpts from an interview, with the authors of this book, about the design, implementation, and feedback from her students.

A of PP: What was it that attracted you to the prospect of making use of the editorial board/journal writing scheme?
Deborah: The uniqueness of the concept. I had never used this strategy before with students, but saw the obvious benefits that it offered. Very few things we do, even in graduate courses, really help students learn about the workings of a peer-review journal. At most, we might have them do readings or jointly submit research articles with us. The editorial board let them look at the entire peer review process from all sides.
A of PP: In this chapter, we described three phases of the course. Can you tell us a little bit about how you made use of and how you modified any of the phases?
Deborah: Though my students had previously engaged in problem solving as mathematics students and teachers, many of them did not have what they thought to be an adequate way of thinking about problem solving, especially in their role as teachers. In order to ease their transition into engaging in what you accurately described in the previous section of this book as anxiety-producing activity, I found it helpful to begin immediately with their reading of classics in the field. This was not done instead of, but in conjunction with their problem solving. They read the books at home, and this provided them with a vocabulary to talk about problem solving in their role as teachers.
A of PP: Interesting. We discussed in this chapter how we selected problems for them to work on early in the course. We chose problems that were rather nontechnical and that required some
manipulation of concrete materials so that observers could get a clearer picture of "what might be in the problem solvers mind." We spoke of geoboards or the cherry in the glass problem. What kinds of things did you have in mind with early problems that you selected for them to work on?
Deborah: I think there was much value in your selecting problems in the first phase of the course as you did. It provided students with the opportunity to observe each other and to hypothesize what they were thinking-especially as they supplemented these observations with class discussions. But when I realized that the students wanted to talk about how they might make use of what they were doing in their own teaching, I decided to introduce an array of problems early on that might appeal to a variety of grade levels. I also selected problems that I thought varied in overall quality. I did, however, try to make use of the four criteria you mention at the end of phase 2 in selecting problems for them to think about. (Authors' note: See pp. 129-130 for discussion of these criteria.)
A of PP: Though they might have been working on a variety of problems that spanned grade levels, to what extent were the students struck by common features among the many different problems?
Deborah: Students were often struck by the variety of strategies used to solve a single problem. This itself led to an interesting discussion on how teachers can allow and encourage multiple strategies for problem solving in their classrooms. By considering an array of strategies to solve problems, students begin to see the problems from diverse perspectives.
A of PP: Were there other ways in which you were able to encourage them to connect their problem solving to their own teaching?
Deborah: Once students had this experience, I started asking their opinions about problems. Is this a good problem? Would you use this problem in the classroom? I was trying to get students to start evaluating problems on a very basic level. Students were then asked to submit their favorite problem and to relate why they believe it is a good problem.
A of PP: What were some of the criteria that emerged for a problem being a "good problem"?
Deborah: I found it helpful to have them read how some modern practitioners-viewed as experts in their areas-identified the qualities of a good problem. We used Marilyn Burns's criteria for mathematical problems to evaluate some of the problems we had done in class and others that the students had submitted individually. Burns lists the following criteria:

1. There is a perplexing situation that the student understands.
2. The student is interested in finding a solution.
3. The student is unable to proceed directly toward a solution.
4. The solution requires use of mathematical ideas.

Looking at her criteria, in addition to the NCTM Standards and Polya's ideas, the students created their own scheme for evaluating a problem. The students did this first individually, and then in small groups. Each small group developed its own rubric for evaluating problems. Then the entire class created a single rubric to evaluate problems. The development of the class rubric involved some heated discussion among class members. I won't spoil the fun by revealing the rubric itself, but I will say that the process took a couple of hours. I was pleasantly surprised at the quantity and quality of discussion that went into developing the class rubric. We finally implemented a Robert's Rules of Order type structure to guide the discussion. Students submitted what they considered key criteria, and then the discussion was opened to speak either for or against the criteria in question. At the end we voted on the criteria to be included. Though we finally reached an agreement, there was enough diversity of opinion so that students began to wonder what sort of compatibility in opinions might be beneficial in the formation of editorial boards.
A of PP: What other things did you do to help pave the way for editorial board activity?
Deborah: In order for each board to be able to put together an entire journal, it is helpful for students to find out what a journal really is. Many students had been given assigned readings of journal articles in their course work; however, this did not require them to attend carefully to the actual components of a journal. At first, the students were asked to find journal articles related to problem solving. Then they were required to report back not only on the articles themselves but on the overall contents and composition of the journals, including such issues as the journals' calls for papers, general format, guidelines for submissions.
A of PP: Wonderful idea. How did you prepare them to establish editorial boards once they had an idea of what was involved in the actual creation of a journal?
Deborah: Since the editorial boards require a strong group dynamic among the editorial board members, I designed the course so that students engaged in group work throughout the entire semester. The group composition changed at regular intervals throughout the first half of the course, so that by the middle of the semester every student had had
an opportunity to work with each person in the class. This way, they knew with whom they wanted to work when it came time to form editorial boards. The students felt that this sort of preparation was very important to the success of the editorial boards. They formed their own boards with people they knew they could work with.
A of PP: That sounds like a good idea. Once the boards were formed, and the students began to write articles for the different boards, were you concerned with the fact that students on a board might find it difficult to evaluate an article submitted by classmates, especially if they knew the identity of the author?
Deborah: Influenced in part by what the students found out in reading the policies of professional journals, the class decided that they wanted the editorial boards to have "blind review." The students either submitted multiple copies or electronically mailed their manuscripts to me, and then I passed them on anonymously to the editorial board. We also had something else interesting arise. Some of the students wanted to submit the same articles to more than one editorial board, in part to increase their chances of being "published." I explained that was not usually done in the "real world" but allowed it as long as all the receiving editorial boards agreed. As it turned out, the editorial boards were very happy to allow for multiple submissions since they all feared not having any submissions. In the end, all of the boards had at least three submissions each, enough that insured that they would be able to produce a viable journal.
A of PP: Since this is the first time you taught a course that made use of the editorial board concept, can you tell us a little bit about the atmosphere of the class?
Deborah: The students really "got into" their journals. One group went around to solicit advertisements from local merchants who were selling products that related to topics in their journal. Though they did not charge the merchants for their advertisements, they might have been able to use some compensation for the cost of photocopying issues of the journal for the entire class. When the others heard of this, I saw their wheels turning. Another group did a complete graphic layout for the cover of their journal that would rival any current journal in print. Another journal incorporated the use of mathematical cartoons to fill in the spaces between articles. The students really took ownership of their journals.
Most, if not all, of the editorial boards met outside of class hours even though I dedicated the last half of class to the editorial boards to do their work. It was obvious that the members of the editorial boards
were also in constant communication electronically. Editorial board members frequently sent each other material via e-mail.

I had required students to submit reflections on their readings during the course. One student in particular hated the emphasis I placed on writing in the course; however, she came to me during the editorial board process and said that she loved doing the editorial boards. She really felt that she gained a lot of insight reading other teachers' ideas. She also commented that even though she didn't enjoy the process, that the multiple written assignments that she had submitted really helped prepare her for writing and submitting her own article.
A of PP: That's impressive. Were there any other signs that they were profiting from and enjoying the experience?
Deborah: For one thing, a fallout that I had not anticipated before teaching the course was that two of the students wrote articles for the course that they will be submitting to one of the NCTM journals. I then tried to encourage the whole class to publish in the NCTM journal at their level. I announced all the Calls for Manuscripts for Teaching Children Mathematics, Mathematics Teaching in the Middle School, and The Mathematics Teacher. After the announcement, four students requested that I e-mail them this information. I don't know whether they will follow through with this inclination, but at very least, many of the students seemed to end up with a more positive attitude toward writing mathematics than they had before. Also, I mentioned that they took a lot of ownership of their journals. The fact that they also were able to assume a playful attitude is shown by the names they gave their journals:

Eat My Pi: A journal dedicated to the use of problems in the classroom that involve food-mainly aimed at K-8 teachers.

Problems, Problems, Problems or Problems: This board called for manuscripts that discuss field research, firsthand accounts, experiences, and clever anecdotes.

Mathematics FUNdamentals: This board was devoted to improving math learning and instruction through motivational and creative activities.

Broadening Problem Solving Horizons: This board mentioned the following in its call for manuscripts: How do teachers actively explore problem solving in the classroom to both hone in on and enhance their students abilities?

The Early Years of Teaching Mathematics: This editorial board's aim was to help novice teachers in their first few years learn how to improve their mathematics instruction using problem posing and solving.

A of PP: Am I right in concluding that your students were accustomed to thinking of mathematics as a problem solving activity, even though they may not have had a language to talk about it, and even though they may not have reflected upon their own problem solving strategies very much in the past? Also, to what extent had they thought about problem posing as a part of the mathematical experience? And of relating problem posing to problem solving as we did in chapter 6 ?
Deborah: The students had a much harder time trying to grasp the idea of problem posing. Most immediately saw its benefits, but still questioned how they, as teachers, could promote or even use the problem-posing process. Many expressed real concern about their $\mathrm{K}-12$ students not being at a level of mathematical maturity to pose real problems. Others worried about how problem posing could really get them "off track" in terms of the required material they needed to cover. The single most successful activity in which the class engaged that involved problem posing was the following. I gave small groups a set of manipulatives (Alphashapes or Miras) with which they were not overly familiar. I then asked them to take the manipulative and to pose problems about it. They worked on this for about 15 minutes and then I shared with them printed resources on activities specifically designed for the manipulative. Then the groups switched manipulatives. The second round was much more productive. The groups seemed more comfortable forming problems the second time around. However, none of the groups really thought "outside of the box." Most of the problems they posed were somewhat obvious, but the activity was an important first step in the road to problem posing.

The editorial boards really lent themselves well to problem posing. Students were told that they had to create a journal and an editorial board portfolio, but that was it. I was very vague, giving no specific directions, and just referred to The Art of Problem Posing as a reference. In the initial stages of the editorial boards, a lot of problem posing occurred. Students frequently posed problems as a way to better define and understand the unfamiliar task at hand. The boards went through many hypothetical scenarios in their discussions. I frequently heard questions starting with the phrase: "What if ..."

For example, one common question was: "What if nobody submits any articles to our journal?" The discussion would then ensue about how to make the journal sound interesting, how to make the submission process as easy as possible, and how to make the dates for submission as flexible as possible. Then the next question: "What if everyone submits their articles at the last minute, how will we review them all?" Then a discussion about submission dates
would begin. It was very interesting to see them grappling with a problem that they themselves had posed-a real problem that was extremely relevant to the situation at hand.
A of PP: That's a fine segue into the rest of this chapter. We do have one more question, however. Can you mention briefly one or two things you might do differently if you were to make use of the editorial board as an organizing feature in a future course?
Deborah: I might start the editorial board process a couple of weeks sooner in the semester. I had required that each student make a single submission; it might be better to ask students to make two submissions rather than one. That would give the editorial boards more experience evaluating their peers' work. Other than that, I would not change much. It has been a wonderful experience both for me and for my students.

## VARIATION OF EDITORIAL BOARD EXPERIENCE: A SECULAR TALMUD

The most deeply embedded concepts in the design of a class around editorial boards and journal writing are those of dialogue and multiple perspective. In its call for papers, each board selects its own perspective and invites nonboard members to write from that point of view. The reaction of the boards to submitted papers begins a dialogue in which students are frequently asked to rethink what they have written. The revision is intended to improve not only the coherence of submitted papers, but to modify the scope as well, and to connect these papers with other themes that have been developed in the course.

We hope that in reading about and experimenting with editorial board/journal writing in your classes, you will come up with variations of the scheme we have described in this chapter. The interview with Deborah Moore-Russo suggests one person's elaboration. Now we would like to suggest one variation that takes the root concepts of dialogue and multiple perspective, and further transforms the scheme-a transformation based on the Talmud.

We coined the acronym T.A.L.M.U.D.-Teaching And Learning Mathematics Using Discourse - to indicate that we will use the ancient Talmudic format as a model for creating a secular modern version dealing with mathematical discourse. ${ }^{7}$

[^58]As we did in discussing the original scheme, we begin this section with a catalogue description.

## TA.L.M.U.D.IC COURSE DESCRIPTION ${ }^{8}$

Here is an excerpt from a catalogue description of the course offering.

## Catalogue Description

## Distributing Talmudic Thought

Mathematics is frequently stereotyped as a technical discipline governed by logic alone. It is often seen as having little in common with the humanities and possessing minimal potential to illuminate matters of taste, aesthetics, emotionality and personhood.

Using the distributive property $[x \cdot(y+z)=(x \cdot y)+(x \cdot z)]$ in mathematics as our peep-hole, and using problem posing as the driving force, we will reexamine some of the most fundamental but rarely articulated mathematical ideas that imbue mathematics with humanistic elements. ... Among the many themes we will explore by use of the distributive property are the following:
a) Misconceptions of extending mathematical systems: "The Fallacy of Greed."
b) The concept of "same" and "different" for (mathematical) objects and systems [the subtlety of "same" and "different"].
c) The role of metaphor in (mathematical) thinking.
d) Visual/ geometric vs. linguistic/algebraic thinking.
e) The place of surprise in individual (mathematical) thought and in the evolution of ideas.
f) Connections between logic and intuition in mathematical thinking.

Though we will be reading a number of professional articles at various points in the course, the main text will be created jointly by the students and the instructor. The text

[^59]will be unconventional and will be designed in the spirit (but not the content) of the Talmud-an ancient text that has a most unusual conceptual scheme and format.

## Secular Talmud and Problem Posing: T.A.L.M.U.D.

The Talmud begins with two main structural devices that are repeated in each chapter: the Mishnah and the Gemara. The Mishnah presents a point of view that is for the most part to be taken for granted. The Gemara is a collection of commentary on the Mishnah. The Gemara not only looks for underpinnings for the Mishnah, but expands on and seeks variations and alternative ways of seeing what has been taken for granted. What is particularly appropriate for educational purposes is that the Gemara consists not only of logical analysis of the Mishnahic beginning, but also engages in associative thinking and storytelling that is suggested by the Mishnah.

In addition to the Mishnah and Gemara, there is a third feature of the Talmudic text: commentary on the Gemara (commentary on the commentary). In the actual Talmud, the commentary is frequently associated with a particular person or a school of thought. In our T.A.L.M.U.D.ic transformation, we seek something a bit different-what we call "educational voices."

We have offered a rough description of the three different writing styles in the Talmud, and discuss shortly how we have adapted these styles to the creation of a class text-a text that has some features in common with what we depicted earlier in this chapter in discussing the notion of student as author and critic.

In addition to style, however, there is something quite unusual in the actual format of the Talmudic page itself. Here is a simplified sketch that depicts a typical page of the Talmud:


Both the Mishnah and Gemara comprise the center of each page. The commentary (educational voices), however, is found in the right-hand and left-hand margins, placed close to the source of the associated central text.

The text itself thus surrounds and envelops the reader. Ideas that begin gently are elaborated on and eventually explored in a myriad of crisscrossing enticing ways.

Some people have likened this two thousand year old tradition to the internet. Rosen claims that "[The Talmud] bears a certain uncanny resemblance to a home page on the Internet, where nothing is whole in itself but where icons and text-boxes are doorways through which visitors pass into an infinity of cross-referenced texts and conversations." Unlike the organization of most mathematical texts, it is assumed as soon as anyone begins to read any section of the Talmud that he or she has already read every other chapter-a "crazy" idea, but one that exemplifies the belief that everything is related to everything else and that we can draw on experiences in our lives that may not have been officially developed in the text.

For the purpose of our course, we sometimes can achieve this "crazy" perspective by starting with ideas that are frequently viewed as obvious and nonproblematic, such as axioms, rules, readily accepted short-cuts, and definitions that are considered noncontroversial.

## Student as Author and Critic

There are many ways in which this T.A.L.M.U.D.ic transformation was organized so as to replicate the author/critic role we described in relation to the creation of a journal. One way was to create editorial boards and to organize the course around the formation of several different Talmudic style texts. As in our initial discussion of editorial boards and journals in this chapter, each editorial board produced its own T.A.L.M.U.D. based on the writings of individual students or groups of students from other boards.

Another option involved the creation of one T.A.L.M.U.D. produced by the entire class, but done in such a way that the students rotated the responsibility for producing the three different T.A.L.M.U.D.ic styles (Mishnah, Gemara, or commentary) for each chapter of the collection. Each board criticized a style submitted by individuals or groups of students not on their own board.

## ORGANIZATION OF THE T.A.L.M.U.D.ic COURSE

## Phase 1: Introducing Problem Posing, The Talmud, and the Distributive Property

Problem posing pervades every aspect of the T.A.L.M.U.D.ic experience. In this phase of the course, students are introduced to the concept in a more accelerated

[^60]way than in the original journal description. Although we discuss some material from the earlier chapters of this book, we focus primarily on the What-If-Not scheme of chapter $4 .{ }^{10}$

Next, we discuss the format and style of the Talmud described in the earlier subsection entitled "Secular Talmud and Problem Posing: T.A.L.M.U.D." Although students may wish to read excerpts of some of the publications in footnote 7 of this chapter, for purposes of this course, the descriptions we have offered in that section should be adequate.

Finally, we spend some time problem posing/discussing/reading about the major mathematical theme of the course: the distributive property. Although many other topics are appropriate to select, we have found this one to be particularly powerful by virtue of its apparent simplicity, familiarity, surprising anti-intuitive applications, unsuspected depth, connection with many aspects of mathematical thought (algebra, geometry, axiomatics), and applicability to many different grade levels. A review of the subsection of chapter 5 entitled "Distributing Things" will provide some indication of its unsuspected depth. For anyone who wishes to make use of the distributive property as a major theme in a T.A.L.M.U.D.ic course, it will be helpful to skim some easily accessible publications that cross-hatch categories (a) through (f) from the above catalogue description. ${ }^{11}$

## Phase 2: Initial T.A.L.M.U.D.ic Experience

In this phase, we distribute excerpts from a secular T.A.L.M.U.D.ic text that are introduced by a Mishnah and followed by several beginning Gemara entries

[^61]following it. ${ }^{12}$ Students work in pairs in order to (1) elaborate on the Gemara and (2) also create "educational voices" (commentary on commentary) that derive from the Gemara.

We then discuss the various kinds of "voices" that students might create in the margin of the text. One voice that appeals to many students is that of the confused pupil. That voice speaks explicitly about why it might be difficult to understand an idea and why it may in fact make no sense. Another voice takes the opposite stance. It seeks to find confusion not as a vice, but as a virtue in generating thought. So, whenever an author presented an idea as clear and noncontroversial, the "confusion-seeking voice" would find ways of muddying it up. Another voice attempts to find applications of topics to other mathematical and nonmathematical contexts. Another explores the value of intentionally misunderstanding an idea developed in the Gemara, thus investigating the ways in which errors can be productive. Another voice talks about how the particular problem reveals something interesting about the nature of mathematics. Yet another seeks personal meaning in the what might look like a detached mathematical topic.

Another T.A.L.M.U.D.ic voice is one that searches for what we described in chapter 3 as "pseudo-history." This voice does not ask what actually happened, but what might have happened that created an interest in a particular topic, or what might have been an earlier rendition of an idea that was accepted in modern times. Additional voices are selected by the students as they begin to reflect on the voices they have created. ${ }^{13}$

## Phase 3: Negotiating Editorial Boards and T.A.L.M.U.D.ic Writing

Having worked in pairs to elaborate on the Gemara and to create marginal comments for a T.A.L.M.U.D.ic section initiated at first by the instructor, the students then shared their writing with the entire class and discussed how and why they produced their work. Here we learn about special interests of the students and how those interests affected the "educational voices" they adopted.

[^62]We then negotiated as a class how we would proceed to create T.A.L.M.U.D.ic text material for the remainder of the semester. We reviewed some of the mathematical themes that we had read about in the first phase, and also considered how the editorial boards would participate in criticizing the work that was to be created for the remainder of the semester.

There is much creative opportunity for instructors who wish to adopt and modify the T.A.L.M.U.D.ic format to orchestrate this final phase. We look forward to communicating with faculty about personal adaptations and also to reading about their efforts in professional journals.

## A T.A.L.M.U.D.ic "SNIPPET"

What we describe here is one T.A.L.M.U.D.ic beginning-one that was presented to students in Phase 2 of the course and that students embellished on as they worked in pairs. ${ }^{14}$

The mathematical Mishnah begins with the simple observation that we can add numbers ending in zero by first ignoring the 0 's, getting their sum, and then "affixing" a zero to the answer. ${ }^{15}$ So, in the following diagram the addition problem in column (A) may be solved by associating each of the addends in column (A) with the same addend with a zero deleted (column B), adding the numbers depicted in (B) and then "affixing" a zero to the answer (69) to arrive at 690 in (A):


Thus we can arrive at the same destination by two different routes:

[^63]\[

$$
\begin{gathered}
\{([1] \text { and }[2]) \text { to }[3] \text { to }[4]\} \\
\text { vs. }[5] \text { directly }
\end{gathered}
$$
\]

The Mishnah then suggests that this simple shortcut for addition of numbers ending in the same digit does not work in general. So to add $657+137$, we cannot ignore the 7 's, just add 65 and 13 , and then "append" 7 to the answer.

Having such a simple beginning, the mathematical Gemara then poses a variety of problems. The first points out how one can explain or summarize what is happening by viewing this as an instance of the distributive property in a more straightforward way than depicted in the diagram just shown. The explanation (although slightly more complicated than the following equation) involves the observation that

$$
(47+22) \times 10=(47 \times 10)+(22 \times 10)
$$

A second Gemara (using the distributive property as in the preceding equation) then explores why the simple algorithm of ignoring and then "affixing" zeros does not work for numbers ending in 5 .

The Gemara then relinquishes the mathematical development and begins to talk of a dream of the narrator, whose daughter is pregnant. He wonders about the gender of his unborn grandchild. He is then whisked away in a chariot and visits a different land that is in every way like his own, except for the fact that time and space are contracted. Everyone is considerably smaller, and events are played out in a fraction of the time it would take in his "real world." Without amniocentesis, he is thus able to discover in a few seconds the gender of his unborn grandchild. ${ }^{16}$

Having read through these beginnings that the instructor presented to the class, students then began to participate in creating the commentary "voices" in the margin of the text. They began to explore the mathematical rationale for the alleged shortcut of adding numbers ending in zero, as well as the relationship between the mathematical and the real world model. Assuming the voice of the "confused student," one pair of students wondered why complicating matters by moving from (A) to (B) was considered a short-cut at all. It appeared to them to be an unnecessary "long cut." Another pair of students responded in the margin by suggesting that the movement from (A) to (B) is merely an explanation-and not the shortcut itself-for why the shortcut is legitimate.

Yet another pair, also resisting the movement from (A) to (B), was confused by the equation

$$
(47+22) \cdot 10=(47 \cdot 10)+(22 \cdot 10)
$$

[^64]They said that a focus on the actual short-cut in (A) suggested that the equation should be in the other direction:

$$
(47 \cdot 10)+(22 \cdot 10)=(47+22) \cdot 10
$$

This raised a question for another pair of students of what the equals sign means in the first place. Is it intended for the sign to have a sense of directionality? Are there circumstances when that is the case and when it is not? Such questions challenge the notion that an equals sign just indicates that we have two different names for the same thing.

Additional "voices" then wondered where in the world this dream came from. They were concerned with how it related to the mathematical example.

Some found it appealing (and others distracting) to be subjected to this attempt at a supposed real-world connection. Different voices worked through the connection in different ways. In one of the most illuminating marginal comments, a pair of students - who were quite confused by what was going on in the case of the mathematics as well as the dream-decided to give up on finding a clear connection and sought instead to "squint" and look for similarities between the mathematics and the dream without recourse to details. They came up with the realization that in each of the two contexts there was an attempt to relate two systems that are different [(as are (A) and (B) in the mathematics, and the actual vs. shortened time span in the dream], but that are similar in other critical ways.

Another pair of students who read this marginal comment began to wonder about the concepts of same and different as they had experienced them in mathematics. They saw congruence as an example of objects that may be different in some ways (e.g., location in space), but the same in others (identical shape).

Eventually we had a class discussion about the fundamental mathematical concept of isomorphism, because this concept captures essential similarities among different systems. Some students went back to make additional marginal comments that attempted to see double isomorphisms in the distributive property and dream example. That is, it appeared that both the mathematics and the real-world example were illustrating efforts at isomorphiclike structures, and furthermore, the two systems looked as if they were almost isomorphic to each other. ${ }^{17}$

Subsequently some students took a fine-grained rather than global look at the alleged isomorphic-like structures in each case and pointed out how there appeared to be difficulties connected with what might be the actual "operations" and what might be the "elements" in each of the structures. Others offered possible resolutions to their dilemma. One pair came up a way of seeing the distributive

[^65]property in general as exemplifying an isomorphism from the real numbers on the real numbers.

One pair, operating with a "pseudo-history" voice, questioned what it must have been like when people first discovered that numbers ending in zero can be treated in such a way that zeros can be "ignored" and then "resurrected." What might they have had to know? What kind of leap might have been required? Could this have been done without the ability to represent numbers in a base system?

The instructor then provided students with a second Mishnah on the distributive property. This one depicted two adjoining rectangles with the same width but different lengths-as described in Figure 34 in chapter 5.

The Gemara then explored the concept of the distributive principle in geometric terms. The Gemara stated that the algebraic and geometric conceptions of the distributive property are logically connected, but that the visual display may be more appealing than an algebraic one to those who are unfamiliar with algebra.

Students then created commentary voices in the margin that posed problems about ways in which the algebraic and geometric representation might have a quite different effect upon people, even if they were thoroughly familiar with the distributive property. One issue raised is how each of these as a starting point might lead to different sorts of generalizations. One pair of students discussed what happened when they presented the distributive principle in the two different ways to two classes and asked the students to generalize. Another pair of students then discussed how these two embodiments might be viewed in three dimensions. ${ }^{18}$

Later on in the course (Phase 3), some students chose the previously discussed Mishnah and Gemara that drew connections between algebra and geometry for another point of departure. Having the geometric equivalent of the distributive property, they created their own Gemara that pointed out that there are many algebraic variations of the distributive property-such as $x^{2}-y^{2}=(x+y)(x-y)$-and they explored what the geometric forms might look like. Again moving to "pseudo-history", they then wondered how Euclid might have expressed the property geometrically, because he did not have the general concept of lengths of line segments. Some commentary looked back at the development of the Pythagorean Theorem from a Euclidean point of view in chapter 4 in order to conjecture how he might have handled the geometric version of the property.

## OTHER T.A.L.M.U.D.ic BEGINNINGS

There are many other enticing beginnings that can be used to launch a T.A.L.M.U.D.ic writing project. We mention several others later, and although we highlight possible

[^66]connections with the distributive property, those who are interested in engaging in such a teaching project of course need not be limited by that theme.

One beginning might involve the creation of mathematical Mishnah and Gemara from among the many easily accessible (but difficult to resolve) paradoxes (or paradox-like situations) in mathematics. Here is a variation of one such paradox-one that caught Einstein's attention despite the fact that on the surface it is quite a simple problem. Eventually, we discover that the solution is anti-intuitive.


#### Abstract

Ziporah (known more popularly as "Zippy") enjoys a winter skiing trip in Switzerland every January. Her favorite ski lift moves at a steady pace, and looking at markers along the way as well as her wrist watch, she notices that the lift moves one mile every four minutes. Looking for adventure of a new and different kind, Zippy asks the operator at the top, since it is her birthday, if he would arrange for a special trip down at the end of the day satisfying the following condition: The constant speed on the way down should be such that the average speed of the entire trip (up and down) is twice the speed of the trip up. How can the operator accommodate Zippy's whim?


Do you have a quick intuitive guess in answer to her question? If so, give the problem further thought to see how it holds up. Think about your first thoughts when you sought an average. Do those thoughts apply here? How would you decide? ${ }^{19}$

Yet another beginning to the T.A.L.M.U.D.ic experience might involve an implicitly central feature of secondary school mathematics and beyond: the extension of number systems from the natural numbers $\{0,1,2,3, \ldots\}$ to the integers (the negative and positive numbers), to rational, complex, and imaginary numbers. Working in the set of real numbers, we can prove that there is no number $x$ that satisfies the equation $x^{2}+1=0$. Then later on, when we create the imaginary numbers, we appear to be claiming that this new system has everything we had in the old, except that in the new system there exists a number $\sqrt{-1}=i$ that has the property that $i^{2}-1=0$. What is going on here? How can we create a new system from the old one by claiming that something exists that we proved could not exist?

Perhaps one of the most perplexing aspects of the extension of number systems is the realization that when we "extend," we not only "acquire" properties we previously did not have, but we must "relinquish" some as well. ${ }^{20}$ Of course, this calls into question what it means to extend a system.

[^67]In closing, we would like to encourage the reader who is thinking about designing a T.A.L.M.U.D.ic course to read a comment made by a student who took such a course. He was a private person, who had just begun to teach, was highly talented mathematically (loved nothing more than solving mathematical problems that were "given"), and who, before engaging in the T.A.L.M.U.D.ic experience, detested the prospect of writing essays. This quote is offered not for self-serving purposes, but to provide a "courage injection" for readers who are intrigued by the possibility of offering such a course, but who are reluctant to jump into what may look like a black hole. It also should sensitize our colleagues to the frequently hidden desire of many of our students to see themselves in personal terms in relation to subject matter even when they would have us believe otherwise.

> This is truly a sad time. Yet still a time to rejoice. The semester is over. Yet so much has to be done. I am trying to think back to what I have immediately learned and accepting that in the future, I will inevitably see more. One of the most peculiar things I have begun to develop, and which I credit this class is a greater ... love of life in general. ... This course is titled for mathematics education, and I feel I have learned a lot of ways to improve upon my mathematics teaching. But I feel that most of what I learned was how to be a better person. ... I feel that what this course has done is keep the playful spirit of the child in our education, and reminded us to keep it in our classrooms and our lives.

## SUMMARY

This chapter has provided a whirlwind of sorts. It has offered snapshots of schemes that we hope will provide teachers with a way of organizing their classes to enable students to be both authors and critics.

With regard to the editorial board, we have offered brief descriptions together with a few short excerpts that has given you some insight into possible ways of incorporating problem-generating ideas. We are grateful to Deborah Russo-Moore for shedding some light on how it is possible to adapt some of what we have proposed.

The T.A.L.M.U.D. is one more variation/extension of the original scheme-one that would most likely be appropriate in its full-blown manner with older students.

Regardless of what scheme you use or adapt or create on your own, there are of course many issues that need to be taken into consideration. Among them are: level being taught, attitude of the students toward writing, the "press" of a heavily prescribed curriculum, the inclination of students to cooperate with each other, their propensity to disclose their evolving ideas in public, and your ability and desire to assume many different roles, not least of which is that of facilitator. Even if you do not have an opportunity to employ these writing schemes in a full-fledged way in your teaching, however, we hope that some of what we have proposed will influence your thinking about ways of introducing multiple ways of thinking about mathematics and dialogue in your classes.

## 8

## Conclusion

## A LOOK BACK

We have presented a rationale and set of strategies for the activity of problem generation. In so doing, we have suggested that although problem posing may have a life of its own, it is also a handmaiden of other aspects of mathematical activity-from problem solving to greater personal understanding.

In chapter 3, we indicated how even a conservative conception of problem generation can both inform us of our preconceptions and widen our perspective. Although the strategies introduced in that chapter are useful for generating problems in which we "accept the given," they can be incorporated into "challenging the given" (the "What-If-Not" phase) as well. You may wish to look back on some of your favorite "What-If-Not" activities to determine where you did (or might) superimpose some of the tactics in chapter 3. To what extent did you make observations or, indeed, create conjectures, in addition to (or as a precursor of) generating questions-depicted in chapter 4 as Level III activity?

Further, what questions attempted to get at the "internal" workings of what you were investigating? Which were geared to its "external" (or global) character? Were the questions framed in such a way that they required an exact answer, or was an approximation allowable (or perhaps even encouraged)? Did you ask questions of a pseudo-historical nature on the modified attributes? What questions from our handy list did you find useful? What new questions did you add to the handy list after the "What-If-Not" experience?

The "What-If-Not" activity of chapters 4 and 5 has provided a vivid picture of an interesting irony-that we understand something best in the context of changing it. We also hope that it has given you an added sense of your own power as well. The
strategies presented should help you appreciate that the generation of questions is not exclusively the task of textbook writers, teachers or other people in authority.

Just as you may enjoy returning to these chapters in an effort to reexamine the question-asking strategies of chapter 3 , you will probably be surprised by how much more you are capable of uncovering now than when you began the journey. The achievement has been a significant one because, as we have suggested, merely seeing things that can be varied is not as easy as you might expect. Experience with the "What-If-Not" strategy will most likely have a positive effect on your ability to see phenomena as capable of modification. There are, however, many important factors that affect our ability to see what "resides" in an object. Why is it that the Inuit tribes see many different varieties of snow, and nomads can discriminate among hundreds of different kinds of camels? Even the most perceptive people in our modern technological society cannot see more than a limited variety of each of these. We are all affected by our personal history, by the cultural milieu, by special needs, and by what we expect to see as well. ${ }^{1}$

## PROBLEM POSING AND MATH ANXIETY

In addition, we are affected by a host of emotional factors which might impede or encourage problem generation-factors such as praise by, fear of, or threat from others. With regard to such emotional factors, there is an interesting twist, a possible "chicken-and-egg" problem that is in need of further clarification and empirical investigation. Many people are interested in finding out why mathematics engenders so much fear in people who may otherwise be highly competent and functional. What are the causes of the "disease"-a disease referred to as mathophobia or math anxiety-and how might it be cured?

Although there are many approaches to this (as yet) vaguely defined problem, we believe that problem generation is a critical component in trying to understand and confront the fear. ${ }^{2}$ There is good reason to believe that problem generation might be a critical ingredient in confronting math anxiety because the posing of problems or asking of questions is potentially less threatening than answering them. The reason is in part a logical one. That is, when you ask a question, the responses "right" or "wrong" are inappropriate, although that category is paramount for answers to questions.

[^68]Of course, it is true that some questions are better than others, and so perhaps there still is the potential to be intimidated in our efforts to inquire. But as we have seen in chapters 4 and 5 , as soon as we begin to deviate from standard and well-trodden knowledge (as in the case of "What-If-Not-ing"), it is frequently difficult to judge the value of a question. Sometimes we do not know how simple, revealing, delightful, or foolish a question is until after considerable analysis has taken place. Since "What-If-Not-ing" leads so naturally to nonstandard curriculum, such problem posing has the potential to redress the balance between expert and novice. It is less easy for teachers to pass judgment on this aspect of the mathematical activity of their students. The sense of intimidation of our students is thus potentially lessened.

A related reason that the threat of judgment becomes tempered in problem generation is that, as we pointed out in chapters 4 and 5 , something that is silly or even meaningless may be a hair's breadth away from something that is significant.

We are suggesting that although there are many factors that may impede our ability to even see things to modify in a "What-If-Not" spirit, the activity of problem generation might be one important element in confronting one of these factors: the fear of mathematics itself. How the potential relationship between fear of mathematics and seeing factors to vary works out for students of different interest and ability requires some empirical research that would be well worth conducting.

But each of us can do investigation of sorts on ourselves without waiting for research findings. We might ask ourselves what kinds of encounters eventually enabled us to see the potential for modification when the "object" to be modified was not apparent on initial inquiry. Although we have not devoted a special section to it, at various places throughout the book we have reflected on our own use of devices of thought that are generally more closely associated with poetry and art than with mathematics. We have spoken about how it is that we caught ourselves making use of imagery or metaphor while engaging in "What-If-Not" activity. We indicated in chapter 4, for example, how "striving" was an image that enabled us to push toward a new way of conceiving of multiplication.

## PROBLEM POSING AND COOPERATION

We can, however, do a lot more than reflect on our use of such devices as an effort to improve our capacity for problem generation. An important thing we can do is to learn to work productively and perhaps less competitively with others. Frequently others see what we neglect to see. If the links between problem generation and problem solving are often interdependent, as we have discussed in chapter 6, but if nevertheless individuals tend to have a dominant style that appreciates one domain over the other, then there is good reason to find ways for sharing our wares. ${ }^{3}$

[^69]In chapter 7 we pointed to one model for having students draw on each other's strengths. Our model is that of student as editorial board member (which includes the variation of the Talmudic format as well). With regard to that model, we suggested many activities that might take place in an educational setting within which both creative and critical judgments can be encouraged. The general conception of organizing classwork around several editorial boards (each of which creates its own policy of acceptance and produces a journal based on submission of articles by colleagues) is one that not only provides an atmosphere for encouraging problem generation, but fosters a spirit of adventure, intellectual excitement, and group unity as well.

It is worth stressing that problem generation is not merely a new fad to be adopted in school settings in the same way that programmed instruction or team teaching washed over the scene decades ago. Problem generation has the potential to redefine in a radical way who it is that is in charge of one's education. As students are encouraged to raise questions and to pose problems of their own, rather than to merely "receive" the so-called wisdom of the ages, they take a new and more active role in their own learning. Exploration along the lines we have advocated in this book also reconceptualizes the concept of error or mistake. As one begins to adopt a "What-If-Not" mentality, then instances that falsify expected generalizations raise whole new possibilities for investigation rather than threaten our search. ${ }^{4}$

But a problem-posing education has even deeper potential than what has been described so far. As a society, we are in need of seeing and standing on end many of the assumptions and conclusions that have been accepted for generations-at least as a heuristic for generating new perspectives, and to test the meaning of old ones. What if we assumed as a society that war was not inevitable? What if we assumed that the most distant foreigner shared the same fundamental beliefs and feelings that we did? Where would that lead us? What would be the implications? What would be our responsibilities?

We certainly have to be clearer about the framing of these issues than we have been so far in order to begin to make sense out of them. However, unless we begin to pose problems that challenge some of the so-called wisdom of the ages, we are most certainly doomed as a civilization. As in the case of turning Euclid's parallel postulate inside out and asking "What-If-Not?" with regard to a 2000 -year-old assumption, we need at the very least to entertain the possibility that our most cherished beliefs might not only be wrong and even harmful, but meaningless as well!

## A RESEARCH AGENDA

We have been concerned in this book primarily with analyzing the roles of problem posing and its relation to problem solving, and in opening up teaching

[^70]options that involve the dual role of student as author and critic. Research has not been part of our focus, except to mention a pocket of research briefly at the end of chapter 6. There is, however valuable research to be done that might very well affect the confidence we hold in our assertions in the previous two sections, and in fact throughout this book. How math anxiety and ability to work productively are affected by a curriculum that pays explicit attention to problem posing in relation to problem solving is a valuable research agenda. It is something that is worth investigating over a protracted period of time-beyond administering a brief paper-and-pencil test or even beyond interviewing subjects for only an hour or so.

How students learn to cooperate as they engage in an editorial board (perhaps in the context of a T.A.L.M.U.D.ic experience) over a semester is something that could positively affect the design of curriculum. Are there stages that students pass through as they assume a critical role in evaluating the work of their peers? What sense of cooperation do they hold within their own editorial board and between themselves and the authors?

In addition to research that integrates problem posing and solving, there is also research to be done that loosens the bond between them. Although it is true that problem solving does very much require problem posing as an important element, it is possible for problem posing to have a healthy life of its own as well.

Why is it, for example, that we do not even notice so much of what is around us? What sort of problems posing does it take for us to get a clearer vision of what we may have taken for granted for so long? There are all sorts of prejudices that have haunted us for generations, and we never notice them until someone has the courage to at least pose a problem that was not even seen as a problem before.

We pointed out in chapter 7 that the history of extending number systems uncovers a strong resistance to numbers that were called "imaginary" "irrational," "complex." What we believed to be "fictitious numbers" (negative integers) eventually (over hundreds of years) gave way to a more respectful stance toward such numbers. It took a lot more than solving problems to acknowledge our prejudices. It took the courage to ask why we were holding the prejudices toward what we viewed as fragile number systems. What were those factors that prevented people from admitting that alternatives to "real" numbers were in fact numbers? The answers could provide a clue as to what our students resist (and why there is resistance) as they are invited to admit new systems into their own mathematical world. Here is an area of research that joins history of a field with an attempt to understand the growth of our students.

As we loosen the bonds even further between problem posing and problem solving, it would be interesting to investigate how "What-If-Not" thinking progresses among students who have been exposed to a problem-posing course. There are lots of issues here. To begin with, no one does a "What-If-Not" on everything. Choices have to be made. In our coursework, we as instructors provided the starting points for "What-if-Not" thinking. Eventually, the students made their own choices. What do they consider when they choose to do a "What-If-Not?" What kind of purpose do they have in mind? To what extent are their choices linked to anything related to problem solving?

It is one thing to do a "What-if-Not" on an element (word, phrase, idea) of a proposition or a statement or even a situation, or a physical object; it is another to do a What-if-Not" on the entire proposition, statement situation or physical object. It is yet another to be made aware of what we never noticed as a potential element to vary. What kind of education enables people to see what was not seen before? Will experiences of the sort encouraged in the courses we described have transfer value so as to enhance noticing the sorts of elements that were not previously noticed? This is an open question, but one that is worth investigating in the context of problem-posing courses.

Another matter to explore is the nature of the mathematical mind of someone who is a good problem poser (ranging from investigating cases that are tied loosely to problem solving to those that are tightly connected). As we indicated in the previous section, there is some evidence that, although there is overlap, the talents seem to be separable in the population at large.

In Krutetskii's classic work on mathematical talent, he makes use, among other things, of "think aloud" techniques, and has students express their thinking while working on problems. ${ }^{5}$ He points out that seeking clarity, simplicity, and elegance in solving problems distinguishes the youngsters who excel from others. Furthermore, aside from problem solving per se, these students both acquire and retain information in an economical manner so that they are not overloaded (Krutetskii's term) with surplus information.

It is not clear how the language of clarity, simplicity, and elegance (language that is of an aesthetic nature) relates to the activity of problem posing, especially when it is not intimately connected with problem solving. Is there some analogous language that we can use to describe someone who is a talented problem poser? Our experience indicates that the activity of problem posing (especially when done in a "What-if Not" milieu) prizes ways of thinking that are much messier than what Krutetskii depicts as talent in problem solving. Talented problem posers (from a "What-if Not" point of view) may focus less on coming up with a clever dénouement and more on appreciating the source and intention of questions, as well as their possible unanswerability. ${ }^{6}$ Again, these are all fascinating matters that require careful and open-minded empirical investigation.

What would make this sort of research particularly appealing would be to have it not only investigate the concept of problem posing, but to do it in a problem-posing mode. Watching students and their instructors in action as they participate in a course on problem posing and trying to make meaning of their experience through

[^71]protracted rather than brief interviews (and other means, not necessarily determined in advance) might be a bit messy. If done as a problem-posing enterprise, however, such research cannot only help to refine some of the questions we have suggested in this section, but might lead to the generation of a research agenda that would awaken us all to aspects of problem posing that we never dreamed possible.

## Bibliography

Adams, J. L. (1974). Conceptual blockbusting. San Francisco, CA: Freeman.
Agre, G. P. (1982). The concept of problem. Educational Studies, 13(2), 121-142.
Becker, H. (1986). Writing for social scientists. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Blake, R. N. (1984). 1089: An example of generating problems. Mathematics Teacher, 77(1), 14-19.
Borasi, R. (1987). Exploring mathematics through the analysis of errors. For the Learning of Mathematics, 7(3), 1-8.
Brown, D. (2003) The Da Vinci Code. New York, NY: Doubleday.
Brown, S. I. (1965). Of 'prime' concern: What domain. Mathematics Teacher, 58(5), 402-407.
Brown, S. I. (1966). Multiplication, addition and duality. Mathematics Teacher, 59(6), 543-550.
Brown, S. I. (1968). Prime pedagogical schemes. American Mathematical Monthly, 75(6), 660-664.
Brown, S. I. (1969). Signed numbers: A product of misconceptions, The Mathematics Teacher, 62(3), 183-195.
Brown, S. I. (1971). Rationality, irrationality and surprise. Mathematics Teaching, 55, 13-19.
Brown, S. I. (1974). A musing on multiplication. Mathematics Teaching, 61, 26-30.
Brown, S. I. (1975). A new multiplication algorithm: On the complexity of simplicity. Arithmetic Teacher, 22(7), 546-554.
Brown, S. I. (1978). Some prime comparisons. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
Brown, S. I. (1979). Some limitations of the structure movement in mathematics education: The meanings of "why." Mathematics Gazette of Ontario, 17(3), 35-40.
Brown, S. I. (1981). Sharon's ‘Kye.' Mathematics Teaching, 94, 11-17.
Brown, S. I. (1981). Ye shall be Known by your generations. For The Learning of Mathematics, 3, 27-36.

Brown, S. I. (1982). Distributing isomorphic imagery. New York State Math Teachers Journal, 32(1), 21-30.
Brown, S. I. (1984). The logic of problem generation: From morality and solving to deposing and rebellion. For the Learning of Mathematics, 4(1), 9-20.
Brown, S. I. (1987). Student generations. Arlington, MA: Consortium for Mathematics and Its Applications (COMAP).
Brown, S. I. (1993a). Mathematics and humanistic themes: Sum considerations. In S. I. Brown \& M. I. Walter (Eds.), Problem posing: Reflections and applications (pp. 249-278). Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 249-278.
Brown, S. I. (1993b). Towards a pedagogy of confusion. In A. White (Ed.), Essays in humanistic mathematics (pp. 107-122). Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America.
Brown, S. I. (1996). Posing mathematically: A novelette. In T. J. Cooney, S. I. Brown, J. Dossey, G. Schrage, \& E. Wittman (Eds.), Mathematics, pedagogy and secondary teacher education (pp. 281-370). Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
Brown, S. I. (2001). Reconstructing school mathematics: Problems with problems and the real world. New York: Peter Lang.
Brown, S. I. (2002). A modern/ancient encounter with text. In B. I. Cohen \& A. A. Ofek (Eds.), Essays in education and judaism in honor of Joseph S. Lukinsky (pp. 221-239). New York: Jewish Theological Seminary of America.
Brown, S. I. (2002). Humanistic mathematics: Personal evolution and excavations. Humanistic Mathematics Network Journal, 26, 71. Continued in online version of journal (2004).
Brown, S. I., \& Rising, G. (1978). One third Cherokee: Problem solving, teaching and intuition. Educational Studies in Mathematics, 9(4), 1-19
Brown, S. I., \& Walter, M. I. (1970). What-If-Not? An elaboration and second illustration. Mathematics Teaching, 51, 9-17.
Brown, S. I., \& Walter, M. I. (1972). The role of the specific and general cases in problem posing and solving. Mathematics Teaching, 59, 52-54.
Brown, S. I., \& Walter, M. I. (1988). Problem posing in mathematics education. Questioning Exchange, 2(2), 123-131.
Brown, S. I., \& Walter, M. I. (Eds.). (1993). Problem posing: Reflections and applications. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
Bruner, J. S., \& Postman, L. (1949). On the perception of incongruity: A paradigm. Journal of Personality, 18(2), 206-223.
Burton, L. (1986). Thinking things through: Problem solving in mathematics. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
Cassidy, C., \& Hodgson, B. R. (1982). Because a door has to be open or closed. Mathematics Teacher, 75(2), 155-158.
Connolly, P., \& Vilardi, T. (Eds.). (1989). Writing to learn mathematics and science. New York: Teachers College Press.
Davis, R. (1973). The misuse of educational objectives. Educational Technology, 13, 34-36.
Dawson, J. D. (1999). Gödel and the limits of logic. Scientific American, 280(6), 76-81.
Dewey, J. (1957). Reconstruction in philosophy. Boston: Beacon Press.
Dillon, J. T. (1988). Levels of problem finding vs. problem solving. Questioning Exchange, 2(2), 105-115.
Eves, H. (1969). An introduction to the history of mathematics. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Ewing, D. (1977, December). Discovering your problem solving style. Psychology Today, pp. 69-73, 138, 140.
Freire, P. (1970). Pedagogy of the oppressed. New York: Seabury Press.
Gardiner, A. (1987). Discovering mathematics: The art of investigation. New York: Oxford University Press.
Gardiner, A. (1987). Mathematical puzzling. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Gardner, M. (1965). Mathematical games. Scientific American, 212(5), 120-126.
Gardner, M. (1969). The multiple fascination of the Fibonacci sequence. Scientific American, 220(3), 116-120.
Getzels, J. W., \& Jackson, P. W. (1962). Creativity and intelligence. New York: Wiley.
Goldenberg, E. P. (1993). On building curriculum materials that foster problem posing. In S. I. Brown \& Marion I. Walter (Eds.), Problem posing: Reflections and applications (pp. 31-38).
Goldenberg, P., \& Walter M. (2003). Problem posing as a tool for teaching mathematics. In H. Schoen \& R. Charles (Eds.), Teaching mathematics through problem solving. (pp. 69-84). Reston,VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
Gowin, D. B. (1981). Educating. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press.
Heath, T. L. (1956). Euclid's elements. New York: Dover.
Hoffer, A. R. (1979). Geometry. Menlo Park, CA: Addison Wesley.
Hofstadter, D. (1980). Gödel, Escher and Bach: An eternal golden braid. New York: Vintage.
Jones, D. L., \& Shaw, K. L. (1988). Reopening the equilateral triangle problem: What happens if.... Mathematics Teacher, 81(8), 634-639.
Jungck, J. R. (1985). A problem posing approach to biology education. American Biology Teacher, 47(5), 264-266.
Kiipatrick, J. \& Wirszup, I. (Series Eds.). (1987). Soviet studies in the psychology of learning and teaching mathematics. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
King, J., \& Schattschneider, D. (Eds.). (1997). Geometry turned on!: Dynamic software in learning, teaching and research. Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America.
Kissane, B. V. (1988). Mathematical investigations: Description, rationale, and example. Mathematics Teacher, 81(7), 520-528.
Krutetskii, V. A. (1976). The psychology of mathematical abilities in school children. In J. Kilpatrick \& I. Wirszup (Series Eds.), Soviet studies in the psychology of learning and teaching mathematics. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Knuth, E. (2002). Fostering mathematical curiosity. Mathematics Teacher, 95(2), 126-130.
Knuth, E., \& Peterson B. (2003). Fostering mathematical curiosity: Highlighting the mathematics. Mathematics Teacher, 96(8), 574-579.
Kuhn, T. J. (1970). The structure of scientific revolutions. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Kuper, M. \& Walter, M. (1976). From edges to solids. Mathematics Teaching, 74, 20-23.
Lavy, H., \& Bershadsky, I. (2003). Problem posing via 'What-If-Not?' strategy in solid geometry: A case study. Journal of Mathematical Behavior, 22, 369-387.
Loomis, E. (1968). The pythagorean proposition. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
Lukinsky, J. (1987). Law in education: A reminiscence with some footnotes to Robert Cover's Nomos and Narrative. Yale Law Journal, 96(8), 1836-1859.

Martin, J. (1970). Explaining, understanding and teaching. New York: McGraw-Hill. Meyerson, L. N. (1976). Mathematical mistakes. Mathematics Teaching, 76, 38-40.
Moïse, E. (1965). Activity and motivation in mathematics. American Mathematical Monthly, 72(4), 407-412.
Nagel, J. \& Newmann, J. (1958). Gödel's Proof. New York: New York University.
National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1989). Curriculum and evaluation standards for school mathematics. Reston, VA: Author.
National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1991). Professional standards for teaching mathematics. Reston, VA: Author.
National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1995). Assessment standards for school mathematics. Reston, VA: Author.
National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (2000). Principles and standards for school mathematics. Reston, VA: Author.
Neusner, J. (1984). Invitation to the Talmud. San Francisco: Harper and Row.
Niven, I., \& Zuckerman, H. (1967). Lattice points and polygonal area. American Mathematical Monthly, 74(10), 1195-1200.
Perkins, D. N. (1986). Knowledge as design. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
Phillips, E., \& Crespo, S. (1996). Developing written communication in mathematics through math penpal letters. For the Learning of Mathematics, 16(1), 15-22.
Phillips, D. C., \& Early, M. (Eds.). (2000). Constructivism in education: Opinions and second opinions on controversial issues: Ninety-ninth yearbook. Washington, DC: National Society for the Study of Education.
Polya, G. (1973). How to solve it. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Polya, G. (1967). Mathematical discovery: On understanding, learning and teaching problem solving. New York: Wiley.
Polya, G. (1954). Mathematics and plausible reasoning. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Potok, C. (1983). In the beginning. New York: Knopf.
Rosen, J. (1998). The Talmud and the internet. Key Reporter, 63(4), 8-11.
Rosen, J. (2000). The Talmud and the Internet: A journey between worlds. New York: Farrar, Strauss \& Giroux.
Schmidt, P. A. (1975). A non-simply connected geoboard-based on the What-If-Not idea. Mathematics Teacher, 68(5), 384-388.
Schön, D. A. (1983). The reflective practitioner. New York: Basic Books.
Silver, E. A., Mamona-Downs, J., Leung, S. S., \& Kenney, P. A. (1996). Posing mathematical problems. Journal for Research in Mathematics Education, 27(3), 293-309.
Stein, M. L., Ulam, S. M., \& Wells, M. B. (1964). A visual display of some properties of the distribution of primes. American Mathematical Monthly, 71, 515-520.
Steinsaltz, A. (1989). The Talmud: A Reference Guide. New York: Random House.
Stempien, M., \& Borasi, R. (1985). Students writing in mathematics: Some ideas and experiences. For the Learning of Mathematics, 5(3), 14-17.
Sterrett, A. (Ed.). (1990). Using writing to teach mathematics. Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America.
Tobias, S. (1993). Overcoming math anxiety. New York: Norton.
Toulmin, S. (1977). Human understanding. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Walter, M. (1968). Polyominoes, milk cartons and groups. Mathematics Teaching, 53, 12-19.
Walter, M. (1969). A second example of informal geometry: Milk cartons. Arithmetic Teacher, 16(5), 368-370.

Walter, M. (1970a). A few steps down the path of a locus problem. Mathematics Teaching, 53, 23-25.
Walter, M. (1970b). Boxes, squares and other things: A teacher's guide to a unit on informal geometry. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
Walter, M. (1980). Frame geometry: An example in posing and solving problems. The Arithmetic Teacher, XXVII(2), 16-18. First published in The Oregon Mathematics Teacher, October 1979, pp. 19-23.
Walter, M. (1981a). Do we rob students of a chance to learn? For the Learning of Mathematics, 1(3), 16-18.
Walter, M. (1981b). Exploring a rectangle problem. Mathematics Magazine, 54(3), 131-134.
Walter, M. (1985). The day all textbooks disappeared. Mathematics Teaching, 112, 8-11.
Walter, M. (1987a). Generating problems from almost anything: Part 1. Mathematics Teaching, 120, 3-7.
Walter, M. (1987b). Generating problems from almost anything: Part 2. Mathematics Teaching, 121, 2-6.
Walter, M. (1989). Curriculum topics through problem posing. Mathematics Teaching, 128, 23-25.
Walter, M. (2003). Looking at a pizza with a mathematical eye. For the Learning of Mathematics, 23(2), 3-10.
Walter, M., \& Brown, S. I. (1969). "What-If-Not." Mathematics Teaching, 46, 38-45.
Walter, M. I., \& Brown, S. I. (1971). Missing ingredients in teacher training: One remedy. American Mathematical Monthly, 78(4), 399-404.
Walter, M. I., \& Brown, S. I. (1977). Problem posing and problem solving: An illustration of their interdependence. Mathematics Teacher, 70(1), 4-13.
Whitin, D., \& Cox, R.W. (2003). A mathematical passage: Strategies for promoting inquiry in grades 4-6. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
Yaglom, I., \& Yaglom, A. (1967). Challenging mathematical problems. San Francisco: Holden-Day.
Zbiek, R. (2003). Using technology to foster mathematical meaning through problem solving. In H. L. Schoen \& C. R. I. Charles (Eds.), Teaching mathematics through problem solving: grades 6-12 (pp. 93-14). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

## Author Index

## A

Adams, J. L., 129, 172
Agre, G. P., 1, 172

## B

Becker, H., 172
Bershadsky 1., 157, 174
Blake, R. N., 108, 172
Borasi, R., 129, 168, 172
Brown, D., 125, 172
Brown, S. I., viii, 1, 9, 31, 68, 80, 84, 97, 100, $102,110,120,133,154,157,158$, $159,160,163,170,172,173,176$
Bruner, J. S., 166, 172
Burton, L., 158, 173

## C

Cassidy, C., 173
Connolly, P., 129, 173
Cox, R.W., 7, 176
Crespo, S., 129, 175

## D

Davis, R., 87, 173
Dawson, J. D., 4, 173
Dewey, J., 2, 173

Dillon, J. T., 9, 173

## E

Early, M., 2, 175
Eves, H., 1, 173
Ewing, D., 132, 174

## F

Freire, P., 174

## G

Gardiner, A., 174
Gardner, M., 43, 68, 174
Getzels, J. W., 167, 174
Goldenberg, E. P., 109, 110, 158, 174
Gowin, D. B., 3, 174

## H

Heath, T. L., 58, 174
Hodgson, B. R., 173
Hoffer, A. R., 83, 174
Hofstadter, D. H., 4, 106, 174

## J

Jackson, P. W., 167, 174

Jones, D. L., 174,
Jungck, J. R., 174

## K

Kenney, P. A., 126, 176
Kilpatrick, J., 170, 174
King, J., 109, 174
Kissane, B. V., 174
Knuth, E., 107, 108, 174
Krutetskii, V. A., 170, 174
Kuhn, T. J., 166, 174
Kuper, M., 79, 174

## L

Lavy, H., 157, 174,
Leung, S. S., 126, 176
Loomis, E., 54, 174
Lukinsky, J., 153, 158, 159, 173

## M

Mamona-Downs, J., 126, 176
Martin, J., 27, 175
Meyerson, L. N., 168, 175
Moïse, E. E., 29, 175

## $\mathbf{N}$

Nagel, J., 4, 175
National Council of Teachers of
Mathematics, $9,10,97,129,130$, 149, 174
Neusner, J., 153, 175
Newman, J., 4, 175
Niven, I., 23, 175

## P

Perkins, D. N., 175
Peterson, B., 108, 174
Phillips, D. C., 2, 175
Phillips, E., 129, 175
Polya, G., 6, 91, 92, 94, 120, 132, 149, 175
Postman, L., 166, 173
Potok, C., 3, 4, 175

## $\mathbf{R}$

Rising, G., 157, 173
Rosen, J., 153, 156, 175

## $\mathbf{S}$

Schattschneider, D., 109, 174
Schmidt, P. A., 175
Schön, D. A., 7, 175
Shaw, K. L., 174
Shukkula, S. L., 126, 176
Silver, E. A., 126, 176
Stein, M. L., 98, 175
Steinsaltz, A., 153, 175
Stempien, M., 129, 175
Sterrett, A., 129, 175

## T

Tobias, S., 166, 175
Toulmin, S., 3, 175

## $\mathbf{U}$

Ulam, S. M., 98, 175

## V

Vilardi, T., 129, 173

## W

Walter, M. I., viii, $9,31,79,83,88,91,95$, $109,110,120,133,154,157,158$, $174,175,176$
Wells, M. B., 98, 175
Whitin, D., 7, 176
Wirszup, l., 170, 174

## Y

Yaglom, A., 23, 176
Yaglom, I., 23, 176

## Z

Zbiek, R., 110, 176
Zuckerman, H., 23, 175

## Subject Index

A
accepting the given and problem posing, 18-32, 35
examples of:
concrete material (a geoboard), $22-23,36-46$
data (arithmetic sequence), 25
data (primitive Pythagorean triples), 23-24
geometric situation (isosceles triangle), 21-22
"real life" situation (handshake problem), 19-20
strategies for phase-one problem generation:
exact verses approximate exploration, 28
handy list of questions, $30-32,64$
history versus pseudo-history, 28-30, $105,110,162$
internal versus external exploration, 27-28, 110
word of caution, 31
after-effect. See problem posing and solving (natural links).
algorithms and "What-If-Not" scheme:
long division, 84-86
multiplication, 75-82
subtraction, 86-88
analyzing a question and "What-If-Not," 52-59
arithmetic sequence, 25
asking a question. See "What-If-Not" scheme.

## B

boxes. See flattened boxes.

## C

challenging the given, $18,23,165$. See also "What-lf-Not."
coming to know, 2, 7
computer program and problem posing. See technology and problem posing.
cooperation and problem posing, 167-169
confusing, foolish or meaningless activities:
in history of mathematics, $4,32,48$, 163,168
value in attribute listing, 35, 74, value of such questions, $4,43-44$, 116-118
conjectures and question asking, 26-27
course on problem posing, 128-153
extracts from journals, 137-147
interview with Moore-Russo, 147-153
organization, 131-135
grading, 135-136
three phases of journal writing, 131-135
word of caution, 135-137
cycling. See "What-lf-Not" scheme.

## D

distributive property and "What-If-Not," 102-104
doodling and "What-If-Not," 80, 98

## E

editorial boards. See also T.A.L.M.U.D.ic course: Phase 3
excerpts of articles, 144-147
letters to authors, 138-140
tables of contents, 140-144
Einstein, 48, 98, 163
equilateral triangles:
after-effect, 120-122
sum of areas on sides as related to Pythagorean theorem, 111-115, 119-120
technology and problem posing, 107-108
exact verses approximate exploration, 28

## F

Fibonacci sequence and "What-If-Not" scheme, 66-74
figure/ground and "What-If-Not" scheme, 105-106
flattened boxes, 94-96
fly/train problem (Von Neumann), 122-123. See also prior effect.

## G

Gauss' arithmetic sum, 34, 77, 121 See also shift in perspective.
geoboards, 22, 23, 37-46, 65, 131, 140, 148
accepting the given, 22-23
challenging the given, $37-46$
circularity, 38-40
shearing, 39-42
infinite plane, 42-45, 65

Geometer's Sketchpad. See technology and problem posing
Goldbach's conjecture, 97-99

## H

handshake problem and accepting the given, 19-20
handy list of questions:
accepting the given, $30-32$
applied to "What-lf-Not," 105, 110, 165
hexagon construction and "What-If-Not" scheme, 88-90
history versus pseudo-history, 28-30, 105, 110,162

## I

internal versus external exploration, 110. See also accepting the given.
inscribing a square. See "What-If-Not" scheme (interrelating the levels)
isomorphic-type structures, 160-161
isosceles triangle and accepting the given.
See accepting the given and geometric situation.

## J

journal writing. 128-153. See also course on problem posing (three phases of journal writing); T.A.L.M.U.D.ic course (Phase 3).

## L

levels of the "What-If-Not" scheme. See "What-If-Not" scheme (levels). long division algorithm and "What-If-Not" scheme, 84-86

## M

math anxiety and problem posing. 166-167
Marion Walter theorem, 109
metaphor, $81,82,154,167$
Moore-Russo (Deborah) interview, 147-153
multiplication algorithm and "What-If-Not"
See algorithms and scheme.

## 0

observations and question asking, 23-27, 81, 121, 165

P
parallel postulate and meaningless questions.
See confusing, meaningless or foolish observations (place in history).
prime numbers, 97-99
primitive Pythagorean triples, 23-24
problem posing and solving:
brief statement of relationships, 2-5
natural links, 116-126
the after-affect, 120-122
the prior affect, 122-123
See research agenda on problem posing.
proof and the scope of mathematics, 32 , 120-122
Pythagorean Theorem, 12-18, 23-26, 46-59
accepting the given, 23-26. See also primitive Pythagorean triples.
challenging the given, 46-59
as the right angle approaches an obtuse angle, 56-58
law of cosines, 52
relation to areas on sides of equilateral triangles, 52-54

## Q

quadratic equation, 123-126. See also problem posing and solving (natural links).
questions. See analyzing a question; asking a question; confusing, meaningless or foolish activities conjectures; handy list of questions; meanings of "Why," observations and question asking.

## R

rational behavior. See interrelating the levels.
rectangles and scheme:
an area problem, 74-79
an internal point problem, 83-84
research agenda on problem posing, 168-170
reversal and "What-If-Not," 105-106

## S

shift in perspective, 2, 123, 127
significance of ideas, $5,14,15,18,29,30$, $35,58,88,126$
situations and propositions, 4, 5, 21, 26, $100,116,163,170$
standards movement, 2, 9, 10, 129, 132, 149, 174
student as editorial board member, 128-131
student reactions to problem posing course, 145, 146, See also word of caution.
student writing and problem posing. See course on problem posing.
subtraction algorithm and the "What-If-Not" scheme, 86-88
surprise
as invitation to "What-If-Not," 78, 83, 110
as problem generating heuristic, 25 , $102,116,121,120$

## T

Talmud, 153
Gemara, 153-164
Mishnah, 153-164
secular Talmud, 153-164
T.A.L.M.U.D.ic course, 154-164
course description, 154-164
other beginnings, 162-164
phase I: Introducing problem posing, 156-157
phase 2: Initial T.A.L.M.U.D.ic
experience, 157-158
phase 3: editorial boards, 158-159
snippet: The distributive property, 159-162
student reactions, 163-164
technology and problem posing. 107-1 10
equilateral triangles, 107-108
Geometer's Sketchpad, 107-108
Marion Walter theorem, 109
unexpected hexagon, 109-110
the given as problematic, 33-35, 120-122
the prior effect. See problem posing and solving (natural links).
Triangular numbers, 77

## W

"What-If-Not" scheme:
aid in perception, 33-35
analyzing a question, 44-46, 62, 64, 72-74
asking a question, 44-46, 51-52, 64, 71-72, 82, 84, 89, 96, 102
asking "What-lf-Not"
applied in detail to geoboard, 38-44 applied in detail to the Pythagorean
theorem, 46-51
attribute listing
applied in detail to geoboard, 38-39, 40
applied in detail to Pythagorean theorem, 36-38
cycling, 59-65
interrelating the levels:
area of rectangle problem, 74-79
distributive property, 102-104
Fibonacci sequence, 66-74
flattened boxes, 94-96
hexagon construction, 88-90
inscribing a square in a triangle, 91-94
point in rectangle problem, 83-85
prime numbers, 97-99
rational intersections in the plane, 100-102
levels of "What-lf-Not" scheme, 35-38, 44-46, 46-47, 52-53, 59-61
why and "What-If-Not." See problem posing and solving (natural links).


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ Stephen I. Brown \& Marion I. Walter (editors, 1993), Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications, Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Hillsdale NJ.

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ We do not provide a formal definition of "problem" here, for the issue is more complicated than it might appear on the surface. For an effort to define the term see Gene P. Agre "The Concept of Problem," in Educational Studies, 13(2), 1982, 121-142. For critical commentary on the definition of problem, see Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, New York; Peter Lang, 2001, pp. 72-80.

[^2]:    ${ }^{2}$ See John Dewey, Reconstruction in Philosophy. Boston, Beacon Press, 1957, for an analysis of such a conception of "coming to know." For a modern-day statement (as well as critical dialogue), see D. C. Phillips \& Margaret Early (Editors), Constructivism in Education: Opinions and Second Opinions on Controversial Issues: Ninety-Ninth Yearbook. Washington; DC, National Society for the Study of Education, $99(1), 2000$. This point of view is expressed in many of the documents known as the "Standards," which we mention further in the final section of this chapter.

[^3]:    ${ }^{3}$ D. Bob Gowin, Educating. Ithaca, NY: Comell University Press, 1981, p. 127.
    ${ }^{4}$ Stephen Toulmin, Human Understanding. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1977, p. 149.

[^4]:    ${ }^{5}$ Chaim Potok, In the Beginning. New York: Knopf, 1976, pp. 295-296.
    ${ }^{6}$ Two relatively nontechnical accounts of Gödel's quite technical proof of undecidability may be of interest. One of them, is James Nagel and James Newman, Gödel's Proof. New York: New York University Press, 1958. Its focus is strictly on mathematics. The other, by Douglas Hofstadter, Metamathematical Themas: Variations on a Theme as the Crux of Creativity (New York: Basic Books, 1985), points out the centrality of that kind of thinking in art and music as well as in mathematics. See John W. Dawson, "Gödel and the Limits of Logic,'Scientific American, 280(6), 76-81, 1999, for a discussion of Gödel's genius and his psychological makeup.

[^5]:    ${ }^{7}$ In addition to teaching courses on problem posing and solving, we have published a number of articles dealing either directly or indirectly with several themes of this book. Some of the chapters reflect or incorporate material from these articles. The following coauthored pieces deal directly with the theme of problem posing: "What-If-Not," Mathematics Teaching (British Journal), 46(Spring), 38-45, 1969; "What-If-Not? An Elaboration and Second Illustration," Mathematics Teaching, 51(Spring), 9-17, 1970; "Missing Ingredients in Teacher Training: One Remedy," American Mathematical Monthly, 78(4), 399-404, 1971; "The Roles of the Specific and General Cases in Problem Posing," Mathematics Teaching, 59, 52-54, 1972; "Problem Posing and Solving: An Illustration of Their Interdependence," Mathematics Teacher, 70, 4-13, 1977. Modifications of the first two pieces appear as part of chapter 4; a few sections of the third appear in chapter 7 ; a small part of the fourth appears in chapter 3 ; a modified version of the last appears in chapter 6 . The editors of each of the journals within which the material originally was published have granted permission to use what appears herein. In addition to articles dealing with problem generation explicitly, we have each made implicit use of problem generation in several others. These pieces are mentioned in chapter 5 in the context of the development of relevant ideas.

[^6]:    ${ }^{8}$ See David Whitin and Robin W. Cox; A Mathematical Passage: Strategies for Promoting Inquiry in Grades 4-6. Portsmouth, NH; Heinemann, 2003, for an example of how some of these ideas have been incorporated in elementary grades.
    ${ }^{9}$ See Donald A. Schön, The Reflective Practitioner. New York: Basic Books, 1983, and Educating The Reflective Practitioner. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 1987, for a discussion of the need to re-conceptualize the preparation of professionals in all fields so as to view problem posing as a central phenomenon. His discussion of the training of architects in particular is quite enlightening.

[^7]:    ${ }^{10}$ See Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter (Editors), Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1993.
    ${ }^{11}$ Although an important and ambitious undertaking, the journal was unfortunately short-lived. The last issue was published two years after the first.
    ${ }^{12}$ The documents are as follows: (1) National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1989). Curriculum and Evaluation Standards for School Mathematics. Reston, VA: Author. (2) National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1991). Professional Standards for Teaching Mathematics. Reston, VA: Author. (3) National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (1995). Assessment Standards for School Mathematics. Reston, VA: Author. (4) National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (2000). Principles and Standards for School Mathematics. Reston, VA: Author.
    ${ }^{13}$ See listing of the "Standards," note 12.

[^8]:    ${ }^{14}$ The web site for the document produced in 2000 is http://standards.nctm.org/document. For current information as the program cvolves, see http://www.nctm.org.

[^9]:    ${ }^{1}$ See section "Contextualizing the Third Edition" in chapter 1 for some evidence for the crumbling of this belief.

[^10]:    ${ }^{1}$ This is not an unreasonable question. If we suggested, for example, that four people should shake hands with each other but no one should shake hands an even number of times, we would find this task impossible to fulfill.

[^11]:    ${ }^{2}$ See Niven, I., and Zuckerman, H. "Lattice Points and Polygonal Area." American Mathematical Monthly, 74, (10), 1195-1200, 1967, for a rigorous analysis of this problem (which can be analyzed intuitively by many junior high school students). See also Yaglom, I., and Yaglom, A. Challenging Mathematical Problems, Vol. 2. San Francisco: Holden Day, 1967. The actual formula for the area $A$ is $A=1 / 2 b+i-1$ where $i$ is the number of nails inside the shape and $b$ the number of nails on the boundary, assuming the unit of area is the square $s$ below. There, for example, $i=2, b=7$. Then, according to this formula, $A$ should equal $1 / 2 \cdot 7+2-1=9 / 2$. Verify that this answer is correct without using this formula.

[^12]:    ${ }^{3}$ Pythagoren triples $x, y, z$, are said to be primitive if $x, y, z$, are relatively prime, meaning they have no factors other than 1 in common. Thus 6 and 7 are relatively prime, but 6 and 8 are not.

[^13]:    ${ }^{4}$ This distinction is elaborated in the context of analyzing "understanding" by Jane Martin, Explaining, Understanding and Teaching, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1970, pp. 152-163.

[^14]:    ${ }^{5}$ Edwin Moïse, "Activity and Motivation in Mathematics," American Mathematical Monthly, 72(4), 1965, p. 410.

[^15]:    ${ }^{6}$ See especially our book Problem Posting: Reflections and Applications (Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1993), which includes many articles reprinted from journals.

[^16]:    ${ }^{1}$ This quote is from George Bernard Shaw's play, "Back to Methuselah." The quote is sometimes incorrectly attributed to Robert F. Kennedy. The play premiered in New York City on May 13, 1922.

[^17]:    ${ }^{2}$ See Howard Eves, An Introduction to the History of Mathematics, 3rd ed. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1969, pp. 84-87.

[^18]:    ${ }^{3}$ We are assuming that our theoretical square geoboard has no border beyond the square grid of nails, and hence for the board in figure 5 a, all four nails would have to be removed in cutting out the largest possible circular board.

[^19]:    ${ }^{4}$ As a start we might ask: Why did we see the two new lines in Figure 8 as analogously placed in relationship to those in Figure 7?

[^20]:    ${ }^{5}$ Although it was not conceived of as a variation to the geoboard, the notion of such an orchard is discussed by Martin Gardner, "Mathematical Games," Scientific American, 212(5), pp. 120-126, 1965. We pose a number of questions here that were not suggested therein.

[^21]:    ${ }^{6}$ In order to appreciate that there is at least one line of vision not blocked by a tree (question 2), consider the line defined by the equation $y=\sqrt{2} \cdot x$. Finding integral values for $x$ and $y$ would be tantamount to expressing $\sqrt{z}$ as a rational number-something that is impossible. Once we have nailed down one such line of vision by use of an irrational slope, it is possible to imagine an infinite number of such lines. The probability of 1 is a consequence of the uncountability of the irrational numbers in relationship to the rational numbers, a concept that is far from intuitively obvious, but beyond the scope of this discussion.

[^22]:    ${ }^{7}$ In this case the negation becomes "'not' the statement is a theorem," which in better English might read "the statement is not a theorem."

[^23]:    ${ }^{8}$ See Elisha Loomis, The Pythagorean Proposition. Washington, DC., 1968: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

[^24]:    ${ }^{9}$ If you have not seen the proof before, it will help you to draw in $\overline{\mathrm{AF}}$ and $\overline{\mathrm{EC}}$ in Figure 14(a). We supply that diagram for the obtuse case later, in Figure 16(b).
    ${ }^{10}$ We have outlined a modern version of Euclid's proof. Since Euclid did not have a marked straight edge, he was not able to denote the regions of any areas by numbers per se. Therefore, he did not have any formulas (like the product of the lengths of the base and altitude) for the areas of geometric figures; nevertheless, he was able to figure out when two figures had the "same area" by making use of the concept of congruence without invoking any concept of number. All of this is quite amazing and should give pause to anyone who claims that "Euclid must go" because of certain deficiencies. In fact, Euclid appreciated the concept of "same area" much as Russell appreciated that of "same number" 23 centuries later. They are both fundamental concepts for the construction of mathematical objects.

[^25]:    ${ }^{11}$ Employing a proof by contradiction (on Proposition 12 and 13 of Book II and Proposition 47 of Book I of the Pythagorean theorem of Euclid), one can easily show that if $a^{2}+b^{2}<c^{2}$, then angle C is obtuse. Figure 17 is merely a generalization of the scheme employed in Proposition 47. The total defect is shaded and is drawn on two separate figures for clarity only. See pp. 404, 405 of Euclid's Elements by T. L. Health (2nd edition. New York: Dover Publications).
    ${ }^{12}$ As a matter of fact, we now have the roots of an argument that explains in some sense the algebraic ideas behind the law of cosines: $c^{2}=a^{2}+b^{2}-2 a b \cos C$. Notice that the area of rectangle $\mathrm{G}^{\prime} \mathrm{C}^{\prime} \mathrm{CG}$ is $\mathrm{GC} \cdot \mathrm{CC}$ which equals $-a b \cos C$, and the area of rectangle $\mathrm{HCC}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{H}^{\prime}$ equals $-b a \cos C$. Hence the total defect is $-2 a b \cos C$. An additional surprise is that each of the areas on the legs contribute equally to the defect; that is, the amount by which the area on each leg fails to contribute to the exact area of its share of the square on the "hypotenuse" is the same!

[^26]:    ${ }^{4}$ Note that in challenging (ii), we are also challenging (iii). It is valuable nevertheless to maintain (iii) as a separate attribute because we could conceivably focus on a Fibonacci-like sequence in which the first two starting numbers are the same, but not equal to 1 . That is, we could challenge (iii) but not (ii). The reason that we have "slippage" from (ii) to (iii) here is that the attributes listed are not independent. It is essential that we allow for such looseness because, as we have said earlier, we may not be able to see the independence of attributes until after we have begun the "What-If-Not" process.
    ${ }^{5}$ At this point you might realize that we did not list the fact that the terms of the sequence were integers as an attribute; you might wish to add it now.

[^27]:    ${ }^{6}$ You may wish to refer back to Figure 11 of chapter 4.

[^28]:    ${ }^{7}$ Using variables here made us realize that another attribute is, "We are given specific numbers." In this case, we decided to use variables rather than specific numbers for brevity of presentation rather than as a consequence of consciously applying the "What-If-Not" strategy.

[^29]:    ${ }^{8}$ The numbers $1,3,6,10,15,21, \ldots$ are called triangular numbers. Note that $1=1,3=1+2,6=1+2+3$, $10=1+2+3+4$. If we denote the triangular numbers by $T_{1}, T_{2}, T_{3}, \ldots, T_{n}$, then $T_{n}=1+2+3+\ldots+n=n(n+1) / 2$. Each $T_{n}$ can be represented by dots that form a triangular pattern; for example

    T3 . . . T4 . . . . T5

[^30]:    ${ }^{9}$ Look at Table 4. Can you see why the number of non-square rectangles for say, four different lengths is $3+3$, i.e., $1+2+3$, and for five different lengths is $6+4$, i.e., $1+2+3+4$ ?

[^31]:    ${ }^{10}$ For further details see Marion Walter, "Frame Geometry: An Example in Posing and Solving Problems," The Arithmetic Teacher, 27(2), 1980, pp. 16-18; and Marie Kuper and Marion Walter, "From Edges to Solids," Mathematics Teaching, 74, 1976, pp. 20-23.

[^32]:    ${ }^{11}$ See Stephen I. Brown, "A New Multiplication Algorithm: On the Complexity of Simplicity," Arithmetic Teacher, 22(7), 1975, pp. 546-554, and "A Musing on Multiplications," Mathematics Teaching, 61, 1974, pp. 26-30.

[^33]:    ${ }^{12}$ This problem as stated appears in Alan R. Hoffer, Geometry. Menlo Park, CA: Addison-Wesley, 1979, Problem 45, p. 526. It is developed in a What-If-Not spirit in Marion Walter, "Exploring a Rectangle Problem," Mathematics Magazine, 54(3), 1981, pp. 131-134.

[^34]:    ${ }^{13}$ Stephen I. Brown, "Sharon's 'Kye," Mathematics Teaching, 94, 1981, pp. 11-17.

[^35]:    ${ }^{14}$ Robert Davis, "The Misuse of Educational Objectives," Educational Technology, 13, 1973, pp. 34-36.

[^36]:    ${ }^{15}$ Marion Walter, "Do We Rob Students of a Chance to Learn?" For the Learning of Mathematics, I(3), 1981, pp. 16-18.

[^37]:    ${ }^{16}$ George Polya, How To Solve It. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1973, pp. 23-25; it is also mentioned in George Polya, Mathematical Discovery: On Understanding, Learning and Teaching Problem Solving, Vol. I. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1962, p. 18 and p. 155.
    ${ }^{17}$ Marion Walter, "A Few Steps Down the Path of a Locus Problem," Mathematics Teaching, 53, 1970, pp. 23-25.

[^38]:    ${ }^{18}$ Marion Walter, "Polyominoes, Milk Cartons and Groups," Mathematics Teaching, 53, 1968, pp. 12-19; "A Second Example of Informal Geometry: Milk Cartons," Arithmetic Teacher, 16(5), 1969,pp. 368-370. Some of the ideas from both of these articles appear in Boxes, Squares and Other Things: A Teacher's Guide to a Unit on Informal Geomerry (Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 1970, fifth printing, 1995).

[^39]:    ${ }^{19}$ See Stephen I. Brown, "Of 'Prime' Concern: What Domain," Mathematics Teacher, 58(5),1965, pp. 402-407; "'Prime' Pedagogical Schemes," American Mathematical Monthly, 75(6), 1968, pp. 660-664. Some of the ideas from these articles also appear in Some Prime Comparisons (Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 1978, third printing, 1991).
    ${ }^{20}$ The definition of $[x]$ is that it is the greatest integer less than or equal to $x$. So [3.7] $=3$.

[^40]:    ${ }^{21}$ See M. L. Stein, S. M. Ulam, and M. B. Wells, "A Visual Display of Some Properties of the Distribution of Primes," American Mathematical Monthly, 71, 1964, pp. 515-20.

[^41]:    ${ }^{22}$ See Stephen I. Brown, "Rationality, Irrationality and Surprise," Mathematics Teaching, 55, 1971, pp. 13-19.

[^42]:    ${ }^{23}$ Stephen I. Brown, "Multiplication, Addition and Duality," Mathematics Teacher, 59(6), 1966, pp. 543-550.

[^43]:    ${ }^{24}$ For an analysis of this and unexpected finds about the distributive property, see the article cited in footnote 23.

[^44]:    ${ }^{25}$ Hofstadter, Douglas H., Gödel, Escher, and Bach: An Eternal Golden Braid, New York: Vintage Books, 1980.

[^45]:    ${ }^{26}$ Eric J. Knuth "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity," Mathematics Teacher, $95(2)$, 2002, pp. 126-130.
    ${ }^{27}$ Eric J.Knuth, "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity," op.cit., p. 127.

[^46]:    ${ }^{28}$ Eric J. Knuth, "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity", op.cit., p. 128.
    ${ }^{29}$ Eric J. Knuth and Blake E. Peterson "Fostering Mathematical Curiosity: Highlighting the Mathematics," Mathematics Teacher, 96(8), 2003, pp. 274-279.

[^47]:    ${ }^{30}$ If each vertex of a triangle is joined to the trisection points of the opposite sides then the ratio of the area of the hexagon that is formed to the area of the triangle is $1 / 10$. This statement was conjectured in 1991 as Marion Walter carried out the explorations described. She was being shown how to use the "Geometry Inventor" dynamic geometry program by staff members of the Education Development Center, which included A1 Cucuo and Paul Goldenberg. Prior to asking the dynamic geometry program to calculate the ratios, no one present guessed correctly that the constant ratio was, surprisingly, $1 / 10$. No attempt was made that afternoon to give a proof of the conjecture. However, a proof was later given by Al Cucuo, who named it the Marion Walter Theorem. The proof of the theorem, together with many references, projects, and other information, can most easily be found by looking at several sites found on the Web under "Marion Walter Theorem."
    ${ }^{31}$ For information about the Geometer's Sketchpad, including a lengthy bibliography and ideas for projects, check out the Web under "Geometer's Sketchpad." See also: Geometry Turned On!: Dynamic Software in Learning,Teaching and Research, James R. King and Doris Schattschneider, Eds., Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America, 1997.

[^48]:    ${ }^{32}$ The Geometer's Sketchpad is only one example of a dynamic geometry program; which, in turn, is only one type of technological aid. For a brief discussion of available technology see, for example, Rose Mary Zbiek, "Using Technology to Foster Mathematical Meaning through Problem Solving," Chapter 7 in Teaching Mathematics through Problem Solving Grades 6-12, Harold L. Schoen and C. I. Randall, Eds. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2003, pp. 93-104.
    ${ }^{33}$ For a few other examples of problem posing see, for example, the following: Paul E. Goldenberg and Marion I Walter, "Problem Posing as Tool for Teaching Mathematics," Chapter 6, pp. 69-84 in "Teaching Mathematics through Problem Solving Grades 6-12," loc. cit: Marion Walter, "Looking at a Pizza with a Mathematical Eye," For The Learning of Mathematics, Vol. 23, No. 2, pp. 3-10; and the essays in Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter, Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications, loc. cit.

[^49]:    ${ }^{2}$ For further development of the ideas described in this section, see George Polya, Mathematics and Plausible Reasoning, Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1954, Vol. 1, pp. 15-17, and Marion I. Walter and Stephen I. Brown, "Problem Posing and Problem Solving: an Illustration of Their Interdependence," Mathematics Teacher, 70 (1), 1977, pp. 4-13. Much of the analysis in the latter piece was inspired by the aforementioned section of Polya's book, in which he offers a brilliant analysis of the relationships among generalization, specialization, and analogy in mathematical thought.

[^50]:    ${ }^{3}$ If you are puzzled as to how to calculate, just "top off or eliminate" succeeding parts of the continued fraction just as you would do if you have to approximate $.3333 \ldots$. Thus calculate, in turn,

[^51]:    ${ }^{4}$ The special case of the quadratic equation we used to generate this continuous fraction is actually the same as the one described in footnote 1 of chapter 5 . We are once again bumping up the famous "golden ratio." In addition to the sources mentioned in footnote 2 of chapter 5, there is a best-selling novel in which variations of the golden ratio appear. See Dan Brown, The Da Vinci Code, New York: Doubleday, 2003.

[^52]:    ${ }^{5}$ Edward A. Silver, Joanna Mamona-Downs, Shukkwan S. Leung, and Patricia Ann Kenney, "Posing Mathematical Problems," Journal for Research in Mathematics Education, 27(3), 1996, pp. 293-309.

[^53]:    ${ }^{1}$ The two schemes as outlined in this chapter will most likely be easier for a college or university instructor of mathematics or mathematics education to implement in a full blown manner than for a teacher of younger students. It is possible, however, for the latter to modify and use bits and pieces of these schemes with a younger audience.

[^54]:    ${ }^{2}$ See National Council of Teachers of Mathematics (2000); Principles and Standards for School Mathematics (Reston, VA: Author) for numerous suggestions about personal journal writing.
    ${ }^{3}$ For a range of sources that speak of other means of student writing in mathematics, see also Paul Connolly and Teresa Vilardi, Writing to Learn Mathematics and Science, Teachers College Press, New York and London, 1989; Eileen Phillips and Sandra Crespo, "Developing Written Communication in Mathematics Through Math Penpal Letters," For the Learning of Mathematics, 16(1), 1996, pp. 15-22; Margaret Stempien and Raffaella Borasi, "Students Writing in Mathematics: Some Ideas and Experiences," For the Learning of Mathematics, 5(3), 1985, pp. 14-17; Andrew Sterrett (Ed.), Using Writing to Teach Mathematics. Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America, 1990.

[^55]:    ${ }^{4}$ See Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter, Eds., (1993), Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications, loc. cit.

[^56]:    ${ }^{5}$ This array of attitudes was more prevalent when we first started teaching the course in the middle 1960s than it is today. Students have become more accustomed to working collaboratively in recent years. Nevertheless, there are students who are uncomfortable working in groups and reflecting on their thinking and evaluating the work of colleagues.

[^57]:    ${ }^{6}$ We encourage them to think about categories of criticism such as editorial revisions, stylistic matters, aesthetic criteria, mathematical accuracy. We also draw their attention to issues such as manner of criticism (encouraging them to think about it not only as making a judgment, but maintaining dialogue).

[^58]:    ${ }^{7}$ The Talmud is a sacred text, considered to be second only to the Bible in Jewish tradition. The Mishnah was produced in the second century A.D. and is an attempt to codify traditions, especially in relation to the Bible. The Gemara, produced in the fifth and sixth centuries, is commentary on the Mishnah. For more detailed, readable descriptions of the Talmud and its format, see Joseph Lukinsky (1987), "Law in Education: A Reminiscence with Some Footnotes to Robert Cover's Nomos and Narrative," Yale Law Journal, 96(8), 1836-1859; Jacob Neusner (1984), Invitation to the Talmud, (San Francisco: Harper and Row); Adin Steinsaltz (1989), The Talmud: A Reference Guide (New York: Random House); Jonathan Rosen,"The Talmud and the Internet," The Key Reporter, 63(4), 1998, 8-11; Jonathan Rosen (2000), The Talmud and the Internet: A Journey Between Worlds (New York: Farrar, Strauss \& Giroux).

[^59]:    ${ }^{8}$ Though I-Stephen I. Brown-devised and taught this course (for several years at the University at Buffalo), I make use of the royal "we" in describing it in the sections that follow. I do so for two reasons: (1) ease of exposition, and (2) gratitude for the helpful criticism made by Marion I. Walter in numerous drafts of these sections. I was able to respond positively to virtually all of her criticism-except one. Against my better judgment, I decided not to accede to her urging to delete the section on dream (and surrounding references to isomorphisms) in the section entitled "A T.A.L.M.U.D.ic 'Snippet." I I agree that it may be a bit obtuse, but I believe the reader will profit from attempting to unravel some of its cryptic meaning. If I am wrong, then please contact Marion Walter and let her know how much you appreciate her efforts-even in vain-to make the text more readable. Also, I am grateful to her for coming up with the acronym T.A.L.M.U.D. to describe the secular Talmud.

[^60]:    ${ }^{9}$ See Rosen: "The Talmud and the Internet," op. cit.

[^61]:    ${ }^{10}$ For additional references on the What-If-Not scheme as well as elaborations of its use in a class room setting, see Hana Lavy and Irena Bershadsky (2003), "Problem Posing via 'What-If-Not?' Strategy in Solid Geometry-A Case Study," Journal of Mathematical Behavior, 22, 369-387.
    ${ }^{11}$ The references to be cross-hatched (by Stephen I. Brown, unless otherwise noted) are mentioned here. The reader may contact the author at sibrown@acsu.buffalo.edu for help in finding references. "Multiplication, Addition and Duality," The Mathematics Teacher, 59(6), 1966, pp. 543-550 and 591 (a, f). "Prime Pedagogical Schemes," American Mathematical Monthly, 75(6), 1968, pp. 660-664 (b, e), "Signed Numbers: A Product of Misconceptions," The Mathematics Teacher; 62(3),1969, pp. 183-195 (a, f). "Rationality, Irrationality and Surprise," Mathematics Teaching, 55, 1971, pp. 13-19 (d, e). "Musing on Multiplication" (British Journal), Mathematics Teaching, 61, 1974, pp. 26-30 (b, c, d,e). "One Third Cherokee: Problem Solving, Teaching and Intuition" (with Gerald Rising), Educational Studies in Mathematics, 9(4), 1978, pp. 1-19 (c, d, e). "Some Limitations of the Structure Movement in Mathematics Education: The Meanings of 'Why,"' Mathematics Gazette of Ontario, 17(3), 1979, pp. 35-40(a, b, f). "Sharon's Kye," Mathematics Teaching, 94, 1981, pp. 11-17 (a, b). "Ye Shall Be Known by Your Generations," For The Learning of Mathematics, 3, 1981, pp. 27-36 (b, d, e, f). "Distributing Isomorphic Imagery," New York State Math Teachers Journal, 32(1), 1982, pp. 21-30 (b, d, f). Epilogue (chapter 6) of Some Prime Comparisons (Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, third printing, 1991)(b,e). "Mathematics and Humanistic Themes: Sum Considerations," Chapter 26 in Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications edited by Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter (Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1993, pp. 249-278) (d, e). "Posing Mathematically," in Mathematics, Pedagogy and Secondary Teacher Education, edited by T. Cooney, S. Brown, J. Dossey, G. Schrage, and E. Wittman, (Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann, 1996) (b, c, d, e, f).

[^62]:    ${ }^{12}$ This initial T.A.L.M.U.D.ic text material is usually created beforehand by the instructor or by students of a previous class. In the discussion that follows, whenever we refer to "Mishnah" or "Gemara," we mean secular material that either the instructor or the students created. For a more thorough description of the concept of a secular Talmud, see Joseph Lukinsky (1987), "Law in Education: A Reminiscence with Some Footnotes to Robert Cover's Nomos and Narrative," loc. cit. Some of these ideas are derived from Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World (New York: Peter Lang, 2001, pp. 215-233), and others from his essay, "A Modern/Ancient Encounter with Text," in Essays in Education and Judaism in Honor of Joseph S. Lukinsky, edited by Burton I. Cohen and Adina A. Ofek (New York: Jewish Theological Seminary of America, 2002, pp. 221-239).
    ${ }^{13}$ Although not directed to Talmudic study per se, Goldenberg describes other sorts of voices that were not explicitly intended for use in a Talmudic sort of text, but that could be incorporated in a Talmudic mode. See E. Paul Goldenberg, "On Building Curriculum Materials That Foster Problem Posing," in Stephen I. Brown and Marion I. Walter (Eds.), Problem Posing: Reflections and Applications, loc. cit., pp. 31-38.

[^63]:    ${ }^{14}$ This is actually a conglomeration of several different efforts that were created in conjunction with students in different courses over time. For ease of exposition, we give the impression that this is an accurate rendition of one T.A.L.M.U.D.ic chapter rather than a conglomeration. The purpose here is to be suggestive and exploratory, rather than to accurately portray what we did. This chapter is written as if all pairs of students joined in completing one text. Some of these ideas are derived from Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, (pp. 215-233), loc. cit., and others from his essay, "A Modern/Ancient Encounter with Text," Essays in Education and Judaism in Honor of Joseph S. Lukinsky (pp. 221-239), loc. cit. Portions of this section, however, have not appeared in print before.
    ${ }^{15}$ See Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, op. cit., pp. 123-125, 227-233.

[^64]:    ${ }^{16}$ See Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, p. 229, loc cit., for further discussion of this story and its relevance to the mathematics.

[^65]:    ${ }^{17}$ In some of the T.A.L.M.U.D.ic writing and especially in the use of marginal "voices" in relation to the concept of isomorphism, the instructor provided assistance (sometimes reading material) in helping to think through the material.

[^66]:    ${ }^{18}$ While the algebraic form led to generalizations that involved equations with more than three variables, the geometric one extended to irregular shapes that had at least one border in common.

[^67]:    ${ }^{19}$ For a discussion of the connection with the distributive property, see Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, pp. 129-132, loc cit.
    ${ }^{20}$ See Stephen I. Brown, "Towards a Pedagogy of Confusion," in Essays in Humanistic Mathematics, Alvin White, (Ed.), (Washington, DC: Mathematical Association of America, 1993, pp. 107-122). For discussion of the relevance to the distributive property in relation to creating the negative numbers, see Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World, pp. 184-188, loc. cit.

[^68]:    ${ }^{1}$ For a philosophical discussion of this phenomenon, see Thomas J. Kuhn, (1970), The Structure of Scientific Revolutions (Chicago: University of Chicago Press). A psychological analysis is provided by, Jerome S. Bruner \& Leo Postman, "On the Perception of Incongruity: A Paradigm," Journal of Personality, XVIII, 1949, pp. 206-233.
    ${ }^{2}$ The expression "math anxiety" was first coined by Sheila Toabias in her book Overcoming Math Anxiety written in 1978. For an updated version, see Sheila Tobias, Overcoming Math Anxiety (New York: Norton, 1993).

[^69]:    ${ }^{3}$ See Jacob W. Getzels \& Philip W. Jackson, Creativity and Intelligence (New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1962), for an empirical argument that the two talents may be more diverse than is generally believed.

[^70]:    ${ }^{4}$ See, for example, Raffaella Borasi, "Exploring Mathematics Through the Analysis of Errors," For the Learning of Mathematics, 1(3), 1987, 1-8, and Lawrence N. Meyerson, "Mathematical Mistakes," Mathematics Teaching, 76, 1976, 38-40.

[^71]:    ${ }^{5}$ See Vadim A. Krutetskii, "The Psychology of Mathematical Abilities in School Children," in Jeremy Kilpatrick and Izaak Wirszup (series Eds.), Soviet Studies in the Psychology of Learning and Teaching Mathematics, 1987, Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
    ${ }^{6}$ For further discussion of this idea, especially in relation to the idea of training students to think like a mathematician, , see Stephen I. Brown, Reconstructing School Mathematics: Problems with Problems and the Real World. New York: Peter Lang, 2001, p. 202.

